# PHC Chapter 21: Emergencies and injuries

The conditions described in this chapter are emergencies and must be treated as such. Medicines used for treatment must be properly secured and recorded (time, dosage, route of administration) on the patient's notes and on the referral letter.

Determine the priority of patients' treatments based on the severity of their condition, using a triage system appropriate to your level of care, available resources and staff at your facility.

## 21.1 CARDIAC ARREST

### 21.1.1 CARDIAC ARREST, ADULTS

I46.0/I46.9

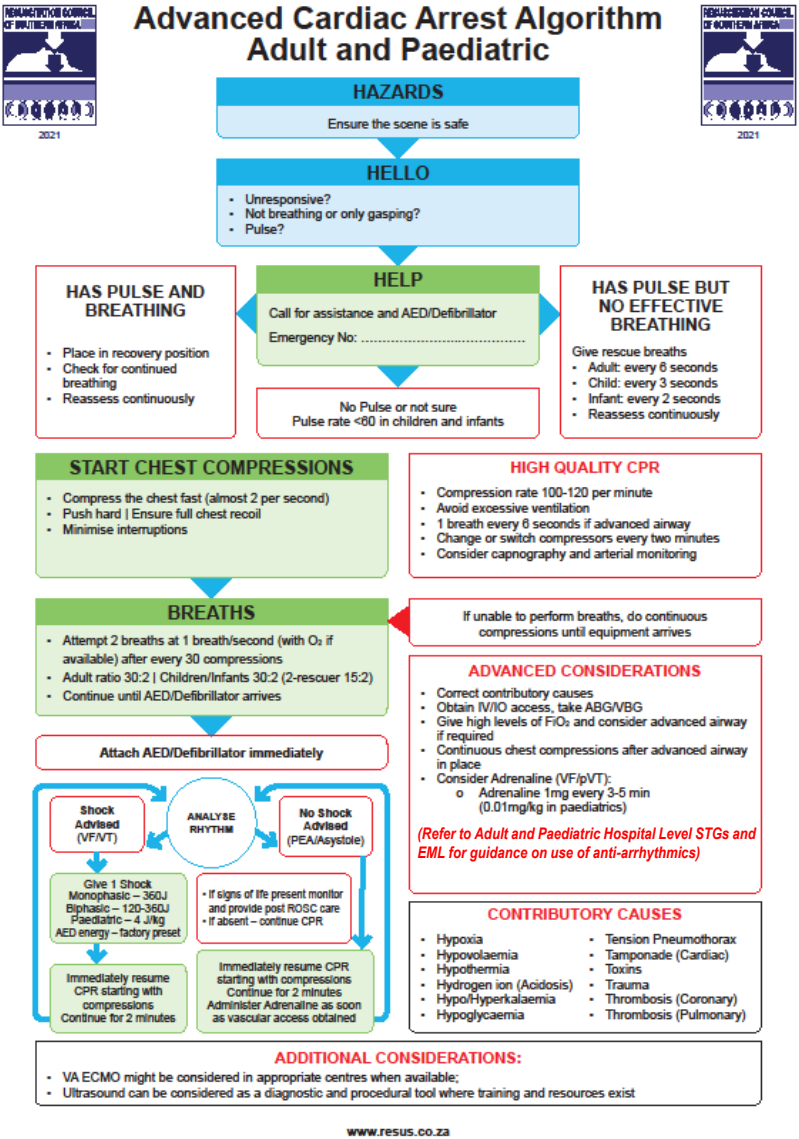



Figure 21.1: Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm *(adapted with permission from the Resuscitation Council of South Africa)*

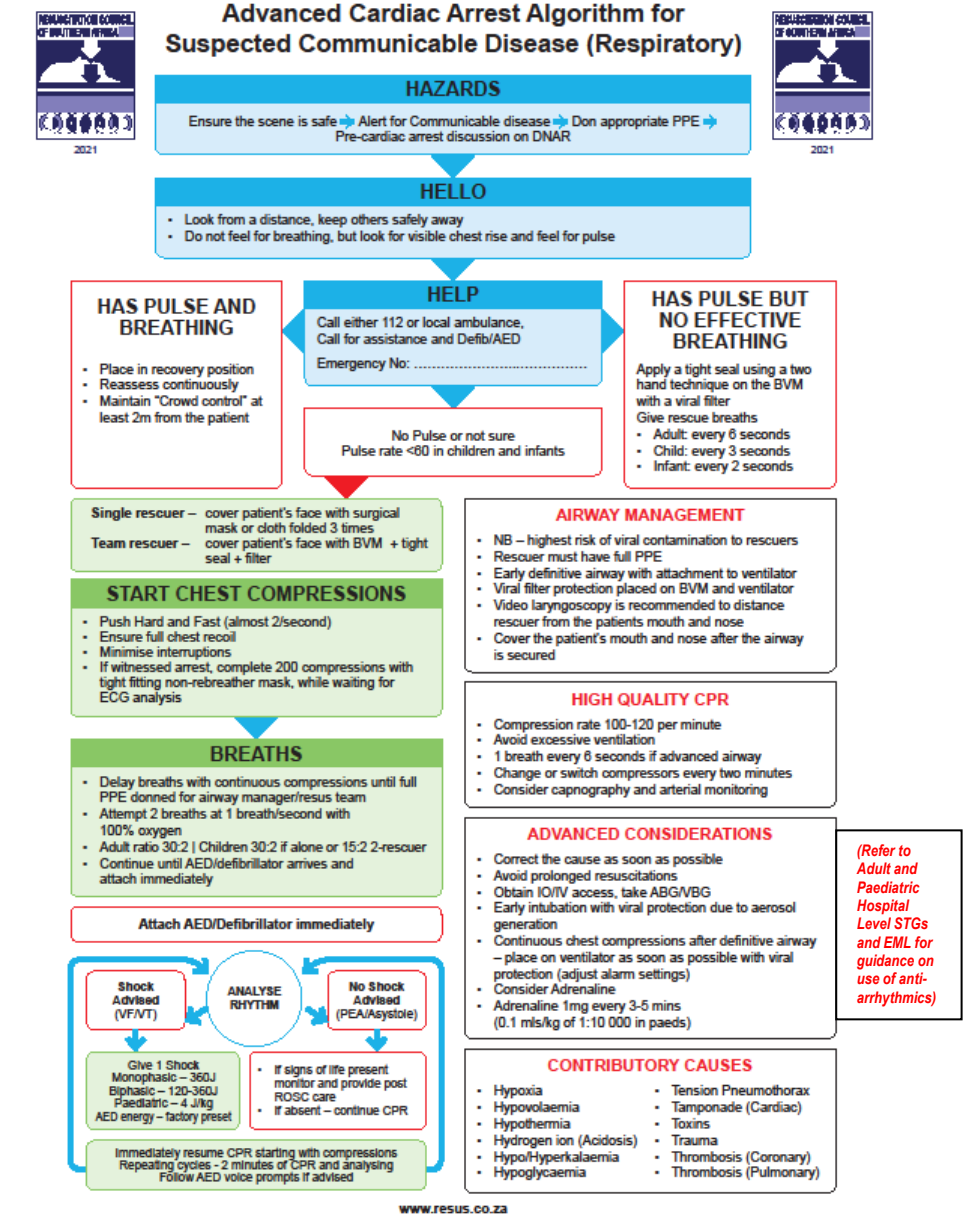



Figure 21.2: Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm - suspected respiratory communicable disease *(adapted with permission from the Resuscitation Council of South Africa)*

## DESCRIPTION

Defined as the loss of a heart beat and loss of a palpable pulse, irrespective of the electrical activity captured on ECG tracing.
Irreversible brain damage can occur within 2-4 minutes.
Clinical features include:

» sudden loss of consciousness;
» absent carotid pulse; and
» loss of spontaneous respiration.

## COVID-19 CONSIDERATIONS

*LoE: IVb*[1]

» The infection risk that CPR poses to providers due to aerosolization of coronavirus particles is not negligible.
» This potential risk should be weighed against the probability of achieving spontaneous return of circulation to inform the decision to initiate or stop CPR.
» For in hospital cardiac arrest in patients with suspected COVID-19, CPR has been shown to not be beneficial unless an immediate reversible cause is suspected, e.g., dislodgement of ET tube, etc. and is therefore not recommended.
» For out of hospital cardiac arrest in patients with suspected COVID-19, it is recommended to not start conventional CPR in unwitnessed cardiac arrest as it will likely not be beneficial.
» Appropriate PPE should be worn by all staff before initiating CPR: FFP3 mask, visor, gloves and gown.

## GENERAL MEASURES

*LoE: IIIb*[2]

» Diagnose cardiac arrest rapidly.
» Make a note of the time of starting resuscitation.
» Document medication given and progress after the resuscitation.
» Follow instructions as per the appropriate algorithm (Fig 21.1 or 21.2) and below.

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

### Hazards, Hello, Help

» Assess for any hazards and remove. Make use of personal protective equipment i.e. gloves, masks.
» Speak to the patient. If they respond, turn into recovery position and continue management as directed by findings.
» If no response, check for carotid pulse and breathing. Take no longer than 10 seconds.
» Call for skilled help and an automated external defibrillator (AED) or defibrillator.

### Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)

» Place the patient on a firm flat surface and commence resuscitation immediately.
» Initiate CAB (Circulation Airway Breathing) sequence of CPR.
» Check the rhythm as soon as defibrillator or AED is available and defibrillate if a shockable rhythm is identified.

**C**irculation

» If there is no pulse or you are not sure, start with 30 chest compressions at a rate of 100-120 compressions per minute, and a depth of +/-5 cm.
» Allow full chest recoil between compressions.

» Minimise interruptions during compressions.

**A**irway and **B**reathing

» To open the airway, lift the chin forward with the fingers of the one hand and tilt the head backwards with other hand on the forehead. Do not do this where a neck injury is suspected (see below).
» If there is no normal breathing, give 2 breaths with bag-valve-mask resuscitator and face mask.
» The administered breaths must cause visible chest rise.
» If not able to perform breaths, continue compressions (reposition head and insert correctly sized oropharyngeal airway and try again after 30 compressions).
» If advanced airway is placed, administer 1 breath every 6 seconds without interrupting chest compressions. Avoid excessive ventilation.
» Oxygenate with 100% oxygen.
» Repeat the cycle of 30 compressions followed by 2 breaths (30:2) until the AED or defibrillator arrives.

**Where neck injury is suspected:**

» Do not perform a chin lift or head tilt manoeuvre if a neck injury is suspected.
» To open the airway, use a jaw thrust:
  - place your fingers behind the jaw on each side
  - lift the jaw upwards while opening the mouth with your thumbs "Jaw thrust"
» Ideally use a 3rd person to provide in-line manual stabilisation of the neck

Initiate fluids, IV/IO access

- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 1000 mL *LoE: IIb*[3]

**AED/D**efibrillator

Attach leads and analyse rhythm as soon as the defibrillator arrives:

If pulseless with shockable rhythm (ventricular fibrillation/tachycardia)

» Defibrillate, as indicated per algorithm (1 shock).
» Immediately resume CPR. Starting with chest compressions.
» Continue CPR cycles of 30:2 for 2 minutes, then reassess for a pulse.
» Administer adrenaline (epinephrine) as per algorithm and medicine treatment below.
» Seek reversible cause of arrest.
» Continue CPR until spontaneous breathing and/or pulse returns.

If pulseless and no respirations with non-shockable rhythm

» Immediately resume CPR. Starting with chest compressions.
» Continue CPR cycles of 30:2 for 2 minutes then reassess for a pulse.
» Administer adrenaline as per algorithm.
» Seek reversible cause of arrest.
» Continue CPR until spontaneous breathing and/or pulse returns.

## IMMEDIATE EMERGENCY MEDICINE TREATMENT:

Adrenaline (epinephrine) is the mainstay of treatment. Give immediately, IV, IO, or endotracheal, when there is no response to initial resuscitation or defibrillation.

- Adrenaline (epinephrine 1 mg), 1:1 000, 1 mL , IV immediately as a single dose.
  - Flush with 5–10 mL of sterile water or sodium chloride 0.9%.
  - Repeat every 3–5 minutes during resuscitation.

**OR**

- Adrenaline (epinephrine 1 mg), intra-osseous (IO), 1:1 000, 1 mL, via IO line. *LoE: IVb*[4]

## ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE

Connect bag-valve-mask resuscitator to 100% oxygen at 10-15L/min flow.
Check glucose and treat hypoglycaemia.
Continue CPR until spontaneous breathing and/or heart beat returns.
Assess continuously (every 2 minutes) until the patient shows signs of recovery.

Termination of resuscitation:

» The decision to stop CPR attempts depends on the specifics of the individual patient and should be based on clinical judgement.
» Consider stopping resuscitation attempts and pronouncing death if there is incurable underlying disease, or if asystole > 20 minutes or in the absence of the factors for prolonging resuscitation as listed below.

*LoE: IIIb*[5]

Consider carrying on for longer especially with:

» hypothermia and drowning
» poisoning or medicine overdose
» neurotoxic envenomation (e.g. black and green mamba or Cape cobra snakebite) – see Section 21.3.1.4: Snakebites

This decision should take into consideration the potential risk that CPR poses to the rescuer e.g. infectious diseases.

## REFERRAL

All patients: transfer with supportive care and accompanying skilled worker until care is taken over by doctor at receiving institution.

## 21.1.2 CARDIOPULMONARY ARREST, CHILDREN

I46.0/I46.9

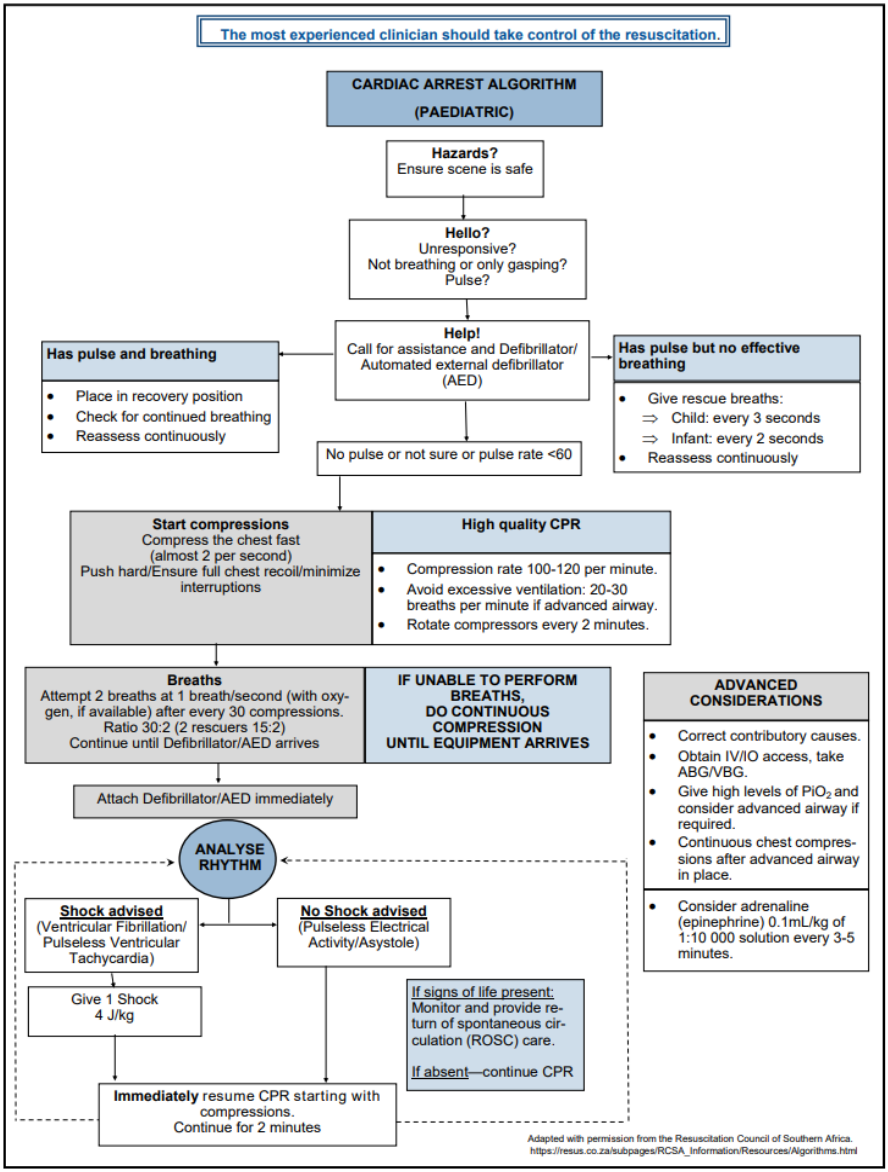



Figure 21.3 Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm for children

## DESCRIPTION

Cardiopulmonary arrest is the cessation of respiration or cardiac function and in children is usually a pre-terminal event as a result of a critical illness.

**The most effective treatment of cardiorespiratory arrest in children is the prevention of the arrest by early recognition and management of severe disease.**
**Bradycardia in children is a pre-terminal event and needs to be treated with resuscitation.**

Cardiorespiratory arrest in children usually follows poor respiration, poor circulation or poor respiratory effort (e.g. prolonged seizures, poisoning, neuromuscular weakness etc.).

The following table outlines signs of serious disease/impending cardiorespiratory failure in a child. These are an indication that urgent effective management is needed.

| | Neurological | Respiratory | Circulatory |
|---|---|---|---|
| Signs of impending cardio-respiratory failure/ severe disease | Decreased level of consciousness or extreme weakness | Increased respiratory rate: > 60 breaths/minute | Increased heart rate: > 160 beats/min in infants > 120 beats/min in children |
| | Abnormal posture | Marked chest indrawing | Decreased pulse volume |
| | Pupils – unequal or abnormal size | Grunting | Capillary refill time > 3 seconds |
| | Presence of convulsions | Flaring nostrils, gasping, shallow/irregular breathing | Poor colour: bluish, grey or marked pallor |

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Diagnose the need for resuscitation rapidly.
» Make a note of the time of starting.
» Place the patient on a firm flat surface and commence resuscitation immediately.
» Document timings of interventions, medication and any response to these. (Ideally, during resuscitation, one staff member should act as a 'scribe').
» Collect all ampoules used and total them at the end.

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

### Hazards, Hello, Help

» Assess for any hazards and remove. Make use of personal protective equipment i.e. gloves, masks.
» Call for skilled help and an automated external defibrillator (AED) or defibrillator.

### Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)

**C**irculation

» Check for signs of life and presence of central pulse for 5–10 seconds. In younger children (infants) check brachial or femoral pulse, in older children use femoral or carotid pulse.
» If there is no pulse (or pulse < 60 beats/minute) with no signs of life, give 30 chest compressions at a rate of 100-120 compressions/minute.
» Compress over lower half of sternum and compress chest by approximately 1/3 of the anteroposterior diameter of the chest.
» Allow chest to fully recoil before next compression.

» Minimise interruptions in compressions.

**A**irway

» Manually remove obvious visible obstruction from the mouth.

**CAUTION**

Do not use blind finger sweeps of the mouth or posterior pharynx as this can impact any obstruction further down the airway.

» In neonates and infants: position the head in neutral position. In children: position in the sniffing position.
» Lift the chin forward with the fingers under the bony tip of the jaw.

**B**reathing

» If there is no breathing, give breaths:
  - preferably with bag-valve-mask resuscitator

  **or**

  - mouth-to-nose (covering child's mouth AND nose with your mouth)

  **or**

  - mouth-to-mouth (occluding nose by pinching child's nostrils).
» Give 2 effective breaths at one breath/second.
» Breaths must produce visible chest rise.

**Then**

» If 2 rescuers are present, carry out cycles of 15 chest compressions followed by 2 breaths (15:2).
» If only 1 rescuer present, carry out cycles of 30 compressions to 2 breaths (30:2).
» Review after 2 minutes or 5 cycles - if pulse is not palpable continue CPR sequence until help arrives.
• Oxygenate with 100% oxygen, if available.

Keep patient covered and warm while resuscitating (although the patient should be fully exposed for short periods during examination).

## IMMEDIATE EMERGENCY MEDICINE TREATMENT:

» Estimate the weight of the child by using a paediatric resuscitation tape (PAWPER tape or Broselow tape). If not available, use the following calculation: *LoE: IIIb*[6]

Weight *[kg]* = (Age *[yrs]* + 4) X 2

» If still no pulse or signs of life after cardiac compressions and ventilations:
• Adrenaline (epinephrine), IV, 0.1 mL/kg of 1:10 000 solution.
  o To make an 1:10 000 adrenaline (epinephrine) solution, dilute 1 mL ampoule of adrenaline (epinephrine) (1:1000) with 9 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% to give 10 mL of 1:10 000 solution.
  o Administer dose according to table below.
  o If no IV line is available, the same dose may be given IO.

| Weight kg | Dose mg | Volume of diluted solution (1: 10 000 solution) | Age months/years |
|---|---|---|---|
| >2.5–7 kg | 0.05 mg | 0.5 mL | Birth–6 months |
| >7–11 kg | 0.1 mg | 1 mL | >6–18 months |
| >11–17.5 kg | 0.15 mg | 1.5 mL | >18 months–5 years |
| >17.5–25 kg | 0.2 mg | 2 mL | >5–7 years |
| >25–35 kg | 0.3 mg | 3 mL | >7–11 years |
| >35–55 kg | 0.5 mg | 5 mL | >11–15 years |

Treat hypoglycaemia if present

- Dextrose 10%, solution, IV, 2–5 mL/kg.
  - To make 20 mL of 10% dextrose solution: draw 4 mL of 50% dextrose using 20 mL syringe and add 16 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% or water for injection.
  - After dextrose bolus, commence dextrose 5–10% infusion, 3–5 mL/kg/hour to prevent blood glucose dropping again.
  - Re-check the blood glucose after 15 minutes: if blood sugar is still low: give further bolus of dextrose 10%, IV, 2 mL/kg and continue dextrose infusion.
  - Assess continuously until the patient shows signs of recovery.

### ADDITIONAL GUIDANCE

Consider stopping resuscitation attempts and pronouncing death if:

» No signs of life are present after 30 minutes of active resuscitation or in the absence of the factors for prolonging resuscitation as listed below. A doctor must be called before resuscitation is stopped. If no doctor on site, telephonic consultation should take place.

Consider carrying on for longer especially with

» hypothermia and drowning
» poisoning or medicine overdose
» neurotoxic envenomation (e.g.black and green mamba or Cape cobra snakebite) – see Section 21.3.1.4: Snakebites

This decision should take into consideration the potential risk that CPR poses to the rescuer e.g. infectious diseases.

### REFERRAL

All patients: transfer with supportive care and accompanying skilled worker until care is taken over by doctor at receiving institution.
For guidance on neonatal resuscitation, see Section 6.6.2: Neonatal resuscitation.

## 21.1.3 BRADYCARDIA

R00.1

Refer to Adult Hospital Level and Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML for relevant guidance.

### DESCRIPTION

In adults, bradycardia refers to a pulse rate <50 beats/minute.

In children, bradycardia refers to a pulse rate <60 beats/minute despite effective oxygenation and ventilation.

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Assess ABC:
  - Airway: ensure airway is open and clear.
  - Breathing: give oxygen to target pulse oximeter saturation of 94–98%.
  - Circulation: assess peripheral perfusion, measure pulse and blood pressure.
» Attach ECG monitor, pulse oximeter and blood pressure cuff.
» Establish IV access.
» Print rhythm strip to confirm bradycardia; if possible, do 12 lead ECG.
» Assess for signs of instability:
  - Hypotension
  - Chest pain
  - Signs of shock: cold clammy peripheries and weak pulses
  - Altered mental status
  - Acute heart failure

## MEDICINE TREATMENT:

### Adults

If unstable:

- Atropine, IV, 0.5 mg as a bolus.
  - Repeat every 3–5 minutes, if no response.
  - Maximum dose: 3 mg.

» Look for and treat contributory causes for bradycardia (see table below).
» If no response to atropine, discuss with referral centre or refer to Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML for guidance.

If stable:

Look for and treat contributory causes for bradycardia (see table below):

| **Contributory causes for bradycardia and treatment** | |
|---|---|
| Hypoxia | Give supplemental oxygen or ventilate. |
| Hypothermia | Warm the patient. |
| Head injury | Give oxygen, elevate head of bed. |
| Heart block | Look for cause of heart block. |
| Hydrogen ion (acidosis) | Look for cause of acidosis. |
| Hypotension | If no signs of heart failure:<br>• Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 200 mL. |
| Toxins and therapeutic agents | Treat as for specific overdose. |

Table 21.1: Causes and treatment of bradycardia

### Children

If unstable:

» Start CPR:
  - 30 compressions: 2 breaths (1 rescuer), or
  - 15 compressions: 2 breaths (2 rescuers)

- Adrenaline (epinephrine), IV, 0.1 mL/kg of 1:10 000 solution (Doctor prescribed).
  - To make 1:10 000 adrenaline (epinephrine) solution: dilute 1 mL ampoule of adrenaline (epinephrine) (1:1000) with 9 mL of sodium chloride 0.9% to give 10 mL of 1:10 000 solution.
  - Administer dose every 3–5 minutes, according to table below.

| Weight kg | Dose mg | Volume of diluted solution (1: 10 000 solution) | Age months/years |
|---|---|---|---|
| >2.5–7 kg | 0.05 mg | 0.5 mL | Birth–6 months |
| >7–11 kg | 0.1 mg | 1 mL | >6–18 months |
| >11–17.5 kg | 0.15 mg | 1.5 mL | >18 months–5 years |
| >17.5–25 kg | 0.2 mg | 2 mL | >5–7 years |
| >25–35 kg | 0.3 mg | 3 mL | >7–11 years |
| >35–55 kg | 0.5 mg | 5 mL | >11–15 years |

If heart block or increased vagal tone suspected: *LoE: IVb*[7]

- Atropine, IV, 0.02 mg/kg/dose as a single dose (Doctor prescribed).
  - Maximum single dose: 0.5 mg.
  - Repeat dose, if no response.

If stable: *LoE: IVb*[8]

» Look for and treat contributory causes for bradycardia (see Table 21.1 above).
» Close monitoring required.
» Ensure adequate oxygenation and ventilation if necessary.

### REFERRAL

**Urgent**

All patients: transfer with supportive care and accompanying skilled worker until care is taken over by doctor at receiving institution.

## 21.1.4 TACHYDYSRHYTHMIAS

R00.0

Refer to Adult and Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML for relevant guidance.

### DESCRIPTION

Adults: tachydysrhythmias refers to a pulse rate > 150 beats/minute.
Children: tachydysrhythmias refers to a pulse rate > normal range for age (see table).

### EMERGENCY TREATMENT

Assess ABC:

» Airway: ensure airway is open and clear
» Breathing: give oxygen to target pulse oximeter saturation of 94-98%
» Circulation: assess peripheral perfusion, measure pulse and blood pressure.

| Child heart rate ranges for age | |
|---|---|
| **Age** | **Normal heart rate range** (beats/minute) |
| Newborn to 3 months | 85–205 |
| 3 months to 2 years | 100–190 |
| 2 years to 10 years | 60–140 |
| > 10 years | 60–100 |

Table 21.2: Child heart rate ranges

» Supraventricular tachycardia is suspected when the pulse rate > 180 beats/minute in a child and > 220 beats/minute in an infant.

» Attach ECG monitor, pulse oximeter and blood pressure cuff.
» Establish IV access.
» Print rhythm strip to confirm tachycardia, if possible do 12 lead ECG.
» Assess for signs of instability:
  - Hypotension
  - Chest pain
  - Signs of shock: cold clammy peripheries and weak pulses
  - Altered mental status
  - Acute heart failure

**Adults**

<u>If unstable:</u>

» Synchronised cardioversion at 100 J.
» Consider analgesia and sedation if time permits.

<u>If stable:</u>

Assess QRS length on rhythm strip or 12 lead ECG:

» If QRS < 0.12 = Narrow complex tachycardia (supraventricular tachycardia):
  - Attempt vagal stimulation: Modified valsalva manoeuvre.
    Ice water applied to face.
    Cough, breath holding.
    Carotid sinus massage (not in elderly or those with cardiac disease).
» If QRS > 0.12 = Wide complex tachycardia (ventricular tachycardia):
  - Correct electrolyte disturbances.
  - Consider toxins, overdoses.

**Children**

<u>If unstable:</u>

» Synchronised cardioversion at 0.5-1 J/kg initially (max 4 J/kg).
» Consider analgesia and sedation if time permits.

<u>If stable:</u>

Assess QRS length on rhythm strip or 12 lead ECG:

» If QRS < 0.08 = Narrow complex tachycardia (supraventricular tachycardia):
  - Attempt vagal stimulation: Ice water applied to face.
» If QRS > 0.08 = Wide complex tachycardia (ventricular tachycardia):
  - Correct electrolyte disturbances.
  - Consider toxins, overdoses.

## REFERRAL

**Urgent**

All patients: transfer with supportive care and accompanying skilled worker until care is taken over by doctor at receiving institution.

## 21.1.5 MANAGEMENT OF SUSPECTED CHOKING/FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION IN CHILDREN

T17.2-5/T17.8-9/ T18.0-1

| | |
|---|---|
| If the child is **able to talk and breathe** | Encourage the child to cough repeatedly while arranging transfer to hospital urgently with supervision. |
| If the child is **conscious but with no effective cough or breathing** | Give up to 5 abdominal thrusts and if ineffective up to 5 back slaps, followed by re-assessment of breathing. Repeat as a cycle until recovery or child becomes unconscious.<br>See technique below and figure 21.4 for differences between infants and children. |
| If the child is **unconscious with no effective breathing** | Call for assistance.<br>Open airway and check for any visible foreign body and remove.<br>Start CPR: compressions and breaths (30:2) (check airway for foreign body each time before giving breaths). |

(Infant: < 1 year of age; Child: > 1 year of age until puberty).
Table 21.3: Managing suspected choking/foreign body aspiration in children

Techniques for back blows and chest/abdominal thrusts:

**Infants**

» Place the baby along one of the rescuer's arms in a head down position with baby face down.
» Rescuer to rest his/her arm along own thigh and deliver 5 back slaps to the child.
» If this is ineffective turn the baby over (face up) and lay on the rescuer's thigh in the head down position.
» Apply 5 chest thrusts – use the lower ½ of the sternum – compress at least 1/3 of the anteroposterior diameter of the chest. If baby too large to carry out on the thigh this can be done across the lap.

**Children**

» In older children, rather lie child across rescuer's lap to deliver back blows. Use abdominal thrusts (Heimlich manoeuvre) in place of chest thrust.
» For abdominal thrust in the standing, sitting, or kneeling position, rescuer to move behind the child and pass his/her arms around the child's body. Then, form a fist with one hand, and place against the child's abdomen above the umbilicus and below the xiphisternum. Then place the other hand over the fist and thrust both hands sharply upwards into the abdomen towards the chest.
» In the lying (supine) position, the rescuer to kneel astride the victim and do the same manoeuvre except use the heel of one hand rather than a fist.

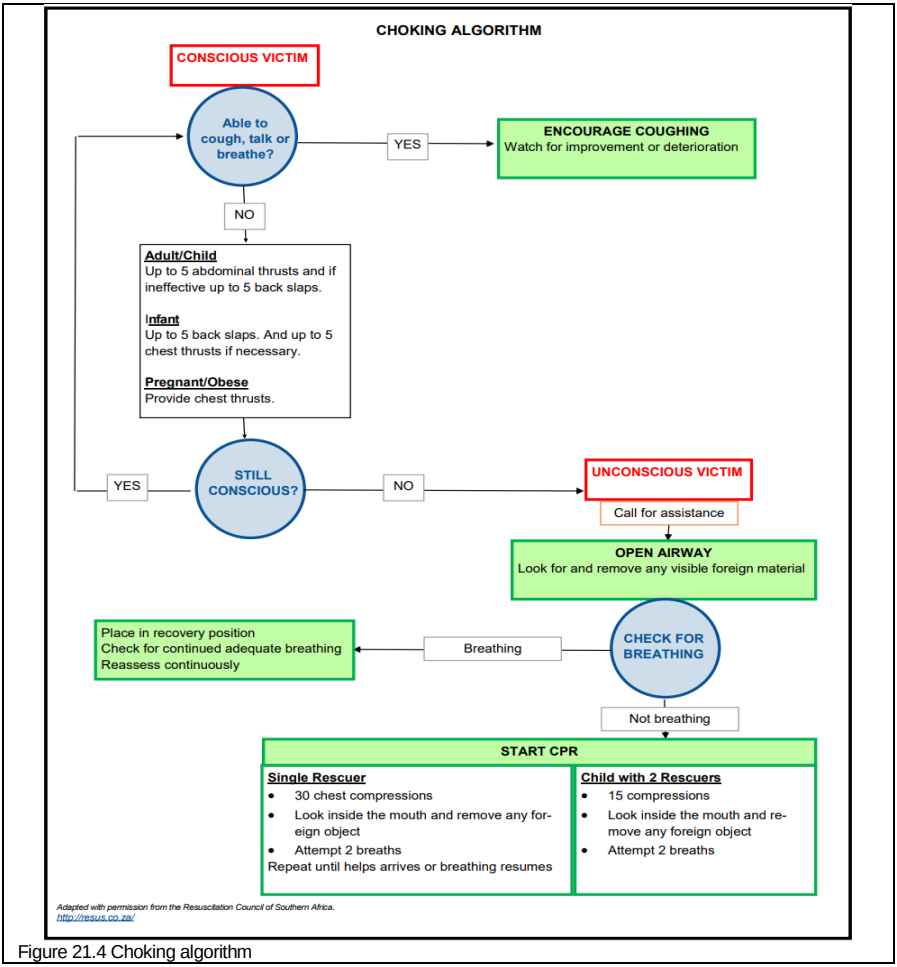



Figure 21.4 Choking algorithm

## 21.2 MEDICAL EMERGENCIES

### 21.2.1 PAEDIATRIC EMERGENCIES

Certain emergencies of the airway, breathing, circulation and neurological system are dealt with in the respiratory, cardiac, and nervous system chapters. All doctors should ensure that they have received appropriate training in at least providing basic (and preferably advanced) life support to children.

## 21.2.1.1 RAPID TRIAGE OF CHILDREN PRESENTING WITH ACUTE CONDITIONS IN CLINICS AND CHCS

### TRIAGE OF ALL SICK CHILDREN

**Triage is the process of rapidly examining all sick children when they first arrive at clinic.**

- It involves the rapid examination of all sick children when they first arrive at the clinic to priotiise their care.
- They should be reassessed regularly while awaiting definitive care.
- Early recognition of life-threatening emergencies and rapid provision of appropriate care can prevent childhood deaths and reduce associated morbidity.

**CATEGORIES**
1. **EMERGENCIES:** Conditions that cannot wait and require immediate treatment.
2. **PRIORITY SIGNS:** Place ahead of the normal queue.
3. **NON-URGENT**: Join the queue.

**1. ASSESS & TREAT AS EMERGENCIES**
*Conditions that cannot wait and require immediate treatment.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| A&B | **AIRWAY AND BREATHING**<br>• Not breathing, ***or***<br>• Obstructed breathing, ***or***<br>• Central cyanosis, ***or***<br>• Severe respiratory distress | ANY SIGN POSITIVE |
| C | **CIRCULATION**<br>• Cold hands, ***and***<br>• Capillary refill 3 secs or more, ***and***<br>• Weak and fast pulse | ALL SIGNS POSITIVE |
| C | **COMA/CONVULSING**<br>• Coma, ***or***<br>• Convulsing (at the time of evaluation) | IF COMA OR CONVULSING |
| D | **SEVERE DEHYDRATION**<br>*(only in child with diarrhea)*<br>Diarrhoea ***plus any two*** of the following:<br>• Lethargy<br>• Sunken eyes<br>• Very slow skin pinch (fold visible for >2 sec) | DIARRHOEA *plus* 2 SIGNS +ve |

If any emergency sign is present, give emergency treatment (s), call for help and draw blood for emergency laboratory investigations as needed.

*Refer to relevant chapters of the EML for management guidance.*

**2. ASSESS FOR PRIORITY SIGNS**
*Place ahead of the normal queue.*
*These children need prompt assessment and treatment.*

- Tiny baby (< 3 months)
- Temperature very high (>38 °C) or very low (<36.4 °C)
- Trauma or other urgent surgical condition
- Severe pallor
- History of poisoning
- Severe pain
- Respiratory distress
- Restless, continuously irritable or lethargic
- Referred for urgent attention
- Malnutrition
- Oedema of both feet
- Burns (major)

**Note:**
*If a child has trauma or other surgical problems, get surgical help or follow surgical guidelines.*

**3. NON-URGENT** (queue)
*No emergency or priority signs.*

Proceed with assessment and further treatment according to the child's priority.

*Adapted from Pocketbook of Hospital Care for Children. Management of Common Childhood Illnesses. National Department of Health, South Africa, 2016. www.health.gov.za/ and the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness 2022: NDoH.*

Figure 21.5: Triage of sick children

**The Emergency Triage Assessment and Treatment (ETAT) triage process, presented above, should be a minimum standard of triage in community health centres.**

For management guidance, refer to relevant sections of the EML as listed below:
» For foreign body aspiration see Section 21.1.5
» For acute asthma see Section 17.1.1
» For acute bronchiolitis see Section 17.1.3
» For croup see Section 17.2.1
» For shock see Section 21.2.11
» For hypoglycaemia and hypoglycaemic coma see Section 21.2.6
» For acute diarrhoea see Section 2.9.1

## 21.2.2 ANGINA PECTORIS, UNSTABLE

See Section 4.3: Angina pectoris, unstable/ Non ST elevation myocardial infarction (NSTEMI).

## 21.2.3 MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION, ACUTE (AMI)

See Section 4.4: Myocardial infarction, Acute (AMI)/ ST Elevation Myocardial Infarction (STEMI).

## 21.2.4 DELIRIUM

F05.0-1/F05.8-9/F44.8/R45.1/R45.4-6

### DESCRIPTION

**Delirium is a medical emergency.**

Delirium is a disturbance in attention, awareness (reduced orientation to the environment), and cognition (e.g. deficits in memory, language, visuospatial ability, or perception). It is acute, developing within hours to days, and fluctuates during the day, worsening in the evenings. It may be hyperactive, with increased mood lability, agitation, and/or uncooperative behaviour, or hypoactive, with poor responsiveness and stupor.

Delirium should not be mistaken for psychiatric disorders like schizophrenia or a manic phase of a bipolar disorder. It is a physiological consequence of another medical condition, substance intoxication or withdrawal (including prescription or over the counter medications and recreational substances), exposure to a toxin, or multiple aetiologies.

There are many possible causes including extracranial causes. Organic or physical illness should also be considered as possible causes.

The elderly are particularly prone to delirium caused by medication, infections, electrolyte and other metabolic disturbances.

Main clinical features are:
» acute onset (usually hours to days)
» impaired awareness
» confusion
» disorientation
» a fluctuating course and disturbances of the sleep-wake cycle

Other symptoms may also be present:
» restlessness and agitation
» hallucinations

» autonomic symptoms such as sweating, tachycardia and flushing
» hypo-activity, with reduced responsiveness to the environment
» aggressiveness
» violent behaviour alone occurs in exceptional cases only

Risk factors for delirium include:

» > 65 years of age
» history of stroke, neurological disorder, falls, previous delirium
» HIV infection
» polypharmacy
» dementia
» medicines such as anticholinergics and hypnotics
» multiple comorbidities
» severe illness
» psychoactive substance intoxication and withdrawal

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Perform investigations to exclude or diagnose an underlying medical problem, the treatment of which is the primary management (e.g. hypoglycaemia, hypoxia, pain etc).

Checklist for diagnosis:

**D** Drugs (Intoxication and withdrawal. Consider Wernicke's encephalopathy).
**I** Infections, e.g. sepsis, pneumonia, urinary tract infections, peritonitis, meningitis.
**M** Metabolic, e.g. hypoglycaemia, electrolyte abnormalities (e.g. hyponatraemia); organ failure (e.g. liver failure, renal dysfunction), CO2 narcosis.
**T** Trauma, e.g. chronic subdural haematoma.
**O** Oxygen deficit (including hypoxia, carbon monoxide poisoning).
**P** Psychiatric or physical conditions, e.g. severe stress or pain.

» Nurse in a calm, predictable and safe environment, avoid changes of staff or rooms/ wards.
» Maintain circadian rhythm: in the day mobilise, provide sensory stimulation/ spectacles/ hearing aids; at night avoid noise, light and procedures
» Ensure effective communication: introduce self with each patient contact, be aware of patient's non-verbal cues, listen attentively, reassure frequently.
» Re-orientate verbally, with a clock, and signage
» Assess for and address dehydration, constipation, hypoxia, infections, pain, and discomfort.
» Avoid abrupt substance withdrawal (see Section 16.9: Substance misuse).

**CAUTION – physical restraint:**

» Worsens the outcomes of delirious patients: this is a last resort when all else has failed and is a short-term measure until chemical restraint and other measures have been achieved.
» Manual restraint: respectful, controlled, applied by personnel of the same sex as the patient.
» Mechanical restraint: only if absolutely necessary to protect the patient and others for as short a time as possible. Document the type, sites and duration of any restraints used. 15-minute monitoring of vital signs, the mental state, restraint sites, and reasons for use.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

» Manage the underlying medical or surgical condition.
» The aim is to contain the person while awaiting transfer to hospital and to enable initial care of the underlying condition.
» Keep antipsychotic or benzodiazepine use to a minimum.
» Use small doses regularly rather than large doses less frequently.
» Adjust doses according to clinical circumstances, e.g., lower doses in the elderly, debilitated

**Acute management**

For severe aggression and disruptive behaviour, see Section 16.1.2 : Aggressive, disruptive behaviour in adults or Section 16.1.3 Aggressive, disruptive behaviour in children and adolescents.

If the delirium is caused by seizures or substance withdrawal, or if communication is difficult

- Midazolam, IM, 7.5–15 mg immediately.
  - Repeat after 30–60 minutes if needed.

**OR**

- Diazepam, slow IV, 10 mg no faster than 5 mg/minute for immediate sedative or hypnotic action.
  - If no response, give a 2nd dose after 30 to 60 minutes.

Switch to oral administration, once containment is achieved.

» Secure airway.
» Exclude hypoglycaemia.
» Monitor for respiratory depression.

**CAUTION - Benzodiazepines**

» Benzodiazepines, especially diazepam IV, can cause respiratory depression.
» Monitor vital signs closely during and after administration. In the frail and elderly patient or where respiratory depression is a concern, reduce the dose by half.
» The safest route of administration is oral followed by IM with the IV route having the highest risk of respiratory depression and arrest. Use the safest route wherever possible.
» In patients with respiratory insufficiency: use oral haloperidol or olanzapine oro-dispersible tablets, IM, or oral instead of IM or IV benzodiazepines.
» Do NOT use IM olanzapine with IM/IV benzodiazepines.
» In the short-term, benzodiazepines can aggravate delirium.
» Allow at least 15–30 minutes for the medication to take effect. Repeated IM doses of benzodiazepines may result in toxicity owing to accumulation.

*LoE:IVb*[9]

If the most likely cause of delirium is a medical disorder and if very restless or agitated:

- Haloperidol, oral, 0.75–1.5 mg, repeated in 30–60 minutes, if required

**OR**

If unable to swallow or oral medication declined:

- Haloperidol, IM, 0.5–1mg.

**OR**

If haloperidol, IM is not available:

- Olanzapine, oral dispersible tablet or IM, 2.5–5 mg.
  - Use lowest dose with caution in the elderly
  - May be repeated in 30–60 minutes, if required
  - Monitor vital signs and beware of oversedation, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, and acute dystonia.

**If alcohol withdrawal/ Wernicke's encephalopathy suspected:**

- Thiamine, IM, 200 mg immediately. *LoE:IVb*[10]

See Section 16.9.4: Alcohol withdrawal (uncomplicated).

**CAUTION**

Thiamine should preferably be administered prior to intravenous glucose to prevent permanent neurological damage.
Do not delay the dextrose administration in a hypoglycaemic patient.

### REFERRAL

**Urgent**

All cases.

## 21.2.5 HYPERGLYCAEMIA AND KETOACIDOSIS

See Section 9.3.2: Severe hyperglycaemia (Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) & hyperosmolar hyperglycaemic state (HHS)).

## 21.2.6 HYPOGLYCAEMIA AND HYPOGLYCAEMIC COMA

E10.0/ /E11.0//E12.0/E13.0/ /E14.0//E16.0/E16.1/E16.2

### DESCRIPTION

Hypoglycaemia is a blood glucose concentration <3 mmol/L (<2.6 mmol/L in neonate) and may rapidly cause irreversible brain damage and/or death.

Clinical features include:

- tremor
- sweating
- tachycardia
- dizziness
- hunger
- headache
- impaired concentration
- confusion
- delirium
- coma
- convulsions
- transient aphasia or speech disorders
- irritability

There may be few or no symptoms in the following situations:

- chronically low blood glucose
- patients with impaired autonomic nervous system response, e.g.
  - the elderly
  - very ill
  - those with long-standing diabetes mellitus
  - malnourished
  - treatment with beta-blockers

People at risk of hypoglycaemia:
» neonates with low birth weight or ill or not feeding well
» malnourished or sick children
» shocked, unconscious or convulsing patients
» alcohol binge
» liver disease
» diabetics on treatment

Hypoglycaemia may be a marker of deteriorating renal function.

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

» Obtain blood for glucose determination immediately.
» Establish blood glucose level with glucometers or testing strip.

**Conscious patient, able to eat**

Adults
- Sweets, sugar, glucose or milk by mouth.
  **or**
- Oral sugar solution.
  - Dissolve 3 teaspoons of sugar (15 g) in 200 mL cup of water.

Breastfeeding child
- Administer breast milk.

Older children
- A formula feed of 5 mL/kg.
  **or**
- Oral sugar solution.
  - Dissolve 3 teaspoons of sugar (15 g) in 200 mL cup of water; administer 5 mL/kg.
  **or**
- Sweets, sugar, glucose by mouth.

**Conscious patient, not able to feed without danger of aspiration**

Administer via nasogastric tube:
- Dextrose 10%, 5 mL/kg.
  (add 1 part 50% dextrose water to 4 parts water to make 10% solution)
  **or**
- Milk.
  **or**
- Sugar solution.
  - Dissolve 3 teaspoons of sugar (15 g) in 200 mL cup of water – administer 5 mL/kg.

**Unconscious patient**

Children
- Dextrose 10%, IV, 2–5 mL/kg.
  - 10% solution, e.g.: 1 part 50% dextrose water to 4 parts water for injection to make 10% solution.
  - After dextrose bolus, commence dextrose 5–10% infusion, 3–5 mL/kg/hour to prevent blood glucose dropping again.

- Re-check blood glucose after 15 minutes: if still low: give further bolus of dextrose 10%, IV, 2 mL/kg and continue dextrose infusion.
- Feed the child as soon as conscious.
- Investigate underlying cause e.g. infection.

Adults

- Dextrose 10%, IV, 5 mL/kg immediately and reassess.
  - 10% solution, e.g.: 1 part 50% dextrose water to 4 parts water for injection to make 10% solution.
  - Generally, an immediate clinical response can be expected.
  - Maintain with 5% dextrose solution infusion until blood glucose is stabilised within the normal range.
  - Investigate underlying cause e.g. infection.

*LoE:IIIb*[11]

*LoE:IIIb*[12]

**Alcoholics/ malnourished (adults)**

- Thiamine, IV/IM, 200 mg immediately.

**CAUTION**

Thiamine should preferably be administered prior to intravenous glucose to prevent permanent neurological damage.
Do not delay the dextrose administration in a hypoglycaemic patient.

Although potentially serious allergic adverse reactions may rarely occur during, or shortly after, parenteral administration, it is recommended that:
- This should not preclude the use of parenteral thiamine in patients where this route of administration is required, particularly in patients at risk of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome where treatment with thiamine is essential;
- Intravenous administration should be by infusion over 30 minutes;
- Facilities for treating anaphylaxis (including resuscitation facilities) should be available when parenteral thiamine is administered.

*LoE:IVb*[13]

## REFERRAL

**Urgent**

» All hypoglycaemic patients on oral hypoglycaemic agents.
» Hypoglycaemic patients who do not recover completely after treatment.
» All children who have had documented hypoglycaemia (unless the cause is clearly identified and safe management instituted to prevent recurrence).

## 21.2.7 NOSE BLEED (EPISTAXIS)

R04.0

## DESCRIPTION

Nose bleed may be caused by local or systemic diseases, or local trauma, especially nose picking, and occurs from an area anterior and inferior to the nasal septum. Consider other conditions associated with nosebleeds, especially if recurrent, e.g. hypertension and bleeding tendency.

### MANAGEMENT

Acute episode
Control bleeding by pinching the nasal wings (alae) together for 5–10 minutes.
If this fails, insert nasal tampons or BIPP stripping into bleeding nostril(s), if available.
Identify underlying cause.

### REFERRAL

» Recurrent nose bleeds.
» Failure to stop the bleeding.

## 21.2.8 PULMONARY OEDEMA, ACUTE

J81

### DESCRIPTION

A life-threatening condition with abnormal accumulation of fluid in the lungs.
Common causes include acute heart failure and acute renal failure (e.g. acute nephritis).
Persons with pulmonary oedema may present similarly to acute bronchospasm.
It is important to distinguish this condition from an acute attack of asthma.

### EMERGENCY TREATMENT

Place the patient in a sitting or semi-Fowlers position.

**Children**

- Oxygen, using a 40% face mask or nasal cannula at 2–3 L/minute.
- Furosemide, IV, 1 mg/kg immediately administered slowly over 5 minutes. See dosing table, pg 23.5.
  - Do not put up a drip or run in any IV fluids.

**Adults**

- Oxygen, using face mask to deliver 40% oxygen at a rate of 6–8 L/minute.

**AND**

- Furosemide, slow IV, 40 mg.
  If response is adequate follow with:
  - Furosemide, IV, 40 mg in 2–4 hours.

  If no response within 20–30 minutes:
  - Furosemide, IV, 80 mg.

**AND**

- Isosorbide dinitrate, sublingual, 5 mg immediately.
  - If needed, repeat every 5–10 minutes.
  - Do not administer if hypotensive. Monitor BP.

*LoE:IVb*

**CAUTION**

Do not use morphine for pulmonary oedema, as there is observational data providing a signal of harm.

*LoE:IIIb*[14]

**Pulmonary oedema due to a hypertensive crisis:**

To treat hypertension:
I10
**ADD**
- ACE-inhibitor, e.g.
- Enalapril 10 mg, oral, as a single dose and refer.

## REFERRAL
**Urgent**
All cases.
(Continue oxygen during transfer).

## 21.2.9 SHOCK
R57.0-2/R57.8-9/ /T79.4/T78.2/Y57.9

## DESCRIPTION
Shock is a life-threatening condition characterised by any evidence of inadequate organ perfusion.

**Signs and symptoms of shock in adults**
» Low blood pressure (systolic BP < 80 mmHg) is the key sign of shock.
» Weak and rapid pulse
» Rapid shallow breathing.
» Low urine output
» Restlessness and altered mental state
» Weakness

**Signs and symptoms of shock in children**
Shock must be recognised while still in the compensated state to avoid irreversible deterioration. Therefore, the following are primarily assessed in children:
» Prolonged capillary filling (> 3 seconds).
» Decreased pulse volume (weak thready pulse).
» Increased heart rate (>160 beats/minute in infants, > 120 beats/minute in children).
» Decreased level of consciousness (poor eye contact).
» Rapid breathing.
» The signs mentioned above are more sensitive in detecting shock before it is irreversible. Decreased blood pressure and decreased urine output are late signs of shock and can be monitored.

| | **Age of child (years)** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **<1** | **1-2** | **2-5** | **5-12** | **>12** |
| **Respiratory rate** (breaths/min) | 30–40 | 25–35 | 25–30 | 20–25 | 15–20 |
| **Heart rate** (beats/min) | 110–160 | 100–150 | 95–140 | 80–120 | 60–100 |
| **Systolic BP** (mmHg) | 80–90 | 85–95 | 85–100 | 90–110 | 100–120 |

Source: The Hands-on Guide to Practical Paediatrics, First Edition. Rebecca Hewitson and Caroline Fertleman. © 2014 John Wiley & Sons, Ltd. Published 2014 by John Wiley & Sons, Ltd. Companion Website: www.wileyhandsonguides.com/paediatrics
Table 21.4: Normal ranges in children:

Types of shock:
» *Hypovolaemic shock:* Most common type of shock. Primary cause is loss of fluid from circulation due to haemorrhage, burns, diarrhoea, etc.
» *Cardiogenic shock:* Caused by the failure of heart to pump effectively e.g. in myocardial infarction, cardiac failure, etc.
» *Septic shock:* Caused by an overwhelming infection, leading to vasodilation.
» *Anaphylactic shock*: Caused by severe allergic reaction to an allergen, or medicine.

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

» Maintain open airway.
• Administer face mask oxygen, if saturation < 94%. *LoE:IIb*[15]
» Consider the need for intubation and seek advice from referral centre.
» Check for and manage hypoglycaemia.
» If anaphylactic shock suspected, see Section 21.2.10: Anaphylaxis.

**Intravenous fluid therapy is important in the treatment of all types of shock, except for cardiogenic shock and septic shock (as fluid-overloaded patients do not need fluid replacement) – these patients should receive a fluid challenge as detailed below. Prompt diagnosis of the underlying cause is essential to ensure optimal treatment.**

**Fluid replacement (avoid in cardiogenic and septic shock):**

Adults
- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 1 L as a rapid bolus.
  - Repeat bolus until haemodynamic status is improved.
  - Once stable, maintain IV fluids with careful monitoring of haemodynamic status; adjust infusion rate as needed to maintain stability pending transfer.

Children
- Sodium chloride 0.9% or ringers lactate, IV, 10 mL/kg as over 20 minutes.
  - Repeat bolus until haemodynamic status is improved.
  - Once stable, maintain IV fluids with careful monitoring of haemodynamic status; adjust infusion rate as needed to maintain stability pending transfer.

**Note:** If patient develops respiratory distress, recheck airway and breathing and discontinue fluids.

**In adults with suspected cardiogenic or septic shock: give a fluid challenge:**
- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 500 mL over 30 minutes.
  - Assess blood pressure and pulse rate response. Response is defined by improvements in blood pressure, pulse rate and mental status (adequate cerebral perfusion) in addition to a good urine output, rather than an absolute blood pressure value.
  - If response is positive, then continue with intravenous fluid. Monitor the patient and stop fluids if patient is breathless. Avoid over hydrating as this could exacerbate hypoxia associated with adult respiratory distress syndrome.
  - If no adequate response to fluid challenge (as described above), suspect septic shock and repeat fluid challenge.

**Septicaemia in children:**
All children with shock, which is not obviously due to trauma or simple watery diarrhoea, should in addition to fluid resuscitation, receive antibiotic cover for probable septicaemia.

- Ceftriaxone, IM, 80 mg/kg/dose immediately as a **single dose**. See dosing table, chapter 23.
  - Do not inject more than 1 g at one injection site.

**CAUTION: USE OF CEFTRIAXONE IN NEONATES AND CHILDREN**

» If *SUSPECTING SERIOUS BACTERIAL INFECTION* in neonate, give ceftriaxone, even if jaundiced.
» Avoid giving calcium-containing IV fluids (e.g. Ringer Lactate) together with ceftriaxone:
  - If ≤ 28 days old, avoid calcium-containing IV fluids for 48 hours after ceftriaxone administered.
  - If > 28 days old, ceftriaxone and calcium-containing IV fluids may be given sequentially provided the giving set is flushed thoroughly with sodium chloride 0.9% before and after.
  - Preferably administer IV fluids without calcium contents.
» Always include the dose and route of administration of ceftriaxone in the referral letter.

## REFERRAL

**Urgent**
All patients, after resuscitation.

## 21.2.10 ANAPHYLAXIS

T78.2/Y57.9

## DESCRIPTION

A very severe allergic reaction that usually occurs within seconds or minutes after exposure to an allergen, but may be delayed for up to 1 hour. The reaction can be short-lived, protracted or biphasic, i.e. acute with recurrence several hours later. Immediate reactions are usually the most severe and/or life-threatening.
Clinical features include:

» Acute onset of signs and symptoms.
» Urticaria (hives) or angioedema.
» Bronchospasm, wheezing, dyspnoea, chest tightness.
» Laryngeal oedema with upper airway obstruction or stridor.
» Gastrointestinal symptoms such as nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea.
» Hypotension and/or shock.
» Dizziness, paraesthesia, syncope, sweating, flushing, dysrhythmias.

## GENERAL MEASURES

<u>Anaphylaxis associated with vaccinations:</u>

» Always keep a fully equipped emergency tray at the vaccination point.
» It is advisable to observe clients for 15 minutes after a vaccination. If a client is known with severe allergies, an observation period of 30 minutes is advised.
» Clients who develop symptoms should be assessed for possible vaccination associated anaphylaxis by considering the following:
  - If signs and symptoms are generalised – involving more than 2 body systems, manage as anaphylaxis.

- If signs and symptoms are serious or life-threatening, even if only one body system is involved (including hypotension, respiratory distress, significant swelling of lips or tongue), treat as anaphylaxis.
- If isolated rash in an otherwise well client, monitor for 30 minutes.

» Collapse following vaccination might be due to anaphylaxis or other causes such as a vasovagal episode:
- Call for help and put patient on his/her back and raise legs.
- Check if responsive – if unresponsive, commence CPR (See section 21.1)
- A vasovagal episode is usually associated with a transient loss of consciousness (< 1 minute), relieved by raising the legs when supine, transient low BP and low HR.
- Collapsing after vaccination usually occurs 5-10 minutes post-vaccination, but can occur up to an hour afterwards.
- Treat as anaphylaxis if loss of consciousness is not brief and not relieved by raising the legs, or if any of the signs or symptoms of anaphylaxis occur.

| | | ACUTE STRESS RESPONSE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ANAPHYLAXIS | GENERAL | VASOVAGAL REACTION WITH SYNCOPE |
| Onset | Usually 5 min after immunization but may be delayed up to 60 min | Sudden, occurs before, during or shortly after (< 5 min) immunization | Sudden, occurs before, during or shortly after (< 5 min) immunization. May present after 5 min if the individual stands suddenly. |
| System | | | |
| Skin | Generalized urticaria (hives) or generalized erythema, angioedema, localized or generalized, generalized pruritus with or without skin rash, generalized prickle sensation, localized injection site urticaria, red and itchy eyes | Pale, sweaty, cold, clammy | Pale, sweaty, cold, clammy |
| Respiratory | Persistent cough, noisy breathing and airway constriction: wheeze, stridor. If very severe, respiratory arrest. | Hyperventilation (rapid, deep breathing) | Normal to deep breaths |
| Cardiovascular | ↑ heart rate, ↓ blood pressure, circulatory arrest | ↑heart rate, normal or ↑systolic blood pressure | ↓ heart rate with or without transient ↓in blood pressure |
| Gastrointestinal | Nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps | Nausea | Nausea, vomiting |
| Neurological and other symptoms | Uneasiness, restlessness, agitation, loss of consciousness, little response when supine or lying flat | Fearfulness, light-headedness dizziness, numbness, weakness, tingling around the lips, spasms in hands, feet | Transient loss of consciousness, good response once supine or lying flat, with or without tonic–clonic seizure |

Table 21.5: Differences between anaphylaxis, general acute stress response and vasovagal reaction with syncope

*Source: Immunization stress-related response. A manual for program managers and health professionals to prevent, identify and respond to stress related responses following immunization. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2019. https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/330277*

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

» Resuscitate (CAB) immediately (See Section 21.1: Cardiopulmonary arrest–cardiopulmonary resuscitation).
» Place hypotensive or shocked patient in horizontal position. Do NOT sit the patient up.
» Severe anaphylaxis: administer oxygen by facemask at high flow rate of 15 L/min.
» Remove the trigger if possible.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

**First line priority:**

Adrenaline (epinephrine) is the mainstay of treatment and should be given immediately.

- Adrenaline (epinephrine), 1:1000, IM, 0.01 mL/kg as a single dose.
  - Children: 1:1000, IM, 0.01 mL/kg as a single dose. See dosing table, pg 23.5.
  - Adults: 1:1000, IM, 0.5 mg (0.5 mL) as a single dose, into the lateral thigh.
  - Repeat in 5 minutes if no improvement.

**Second line priority:**

- Oxygen, 8-10 L/minute via facemask or up to 100% oxygen, as needed.

**AND** *LoE:IVb*[16]

**If hypotension** not responding promptly to adrenaline (epinephrine), also give:

- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV:
  - Children: 20 mL/kg, over 5 to 10 minutes. Repeat as needed.
  - Adults: 1–2 L, at the most rapid flow rate possible in the first minutes of treatment. Repeat as needed.

**CAUTION**
Monitor continuously for clinical response and fluid overload.

**AND** *LoE:IVb*[17]

**If wheeze:**

- Salbutamol 0.5%, (5mg/mL) solution, nebulised, with high flow oxygen.
  - Children: 0.5–1 mL (2.5–5 mg) salbutamol 0.5% solution,
  - Adults: 1 mL (5 mg) salbutamol 0.5% solution,

**AND** *LoE:IVb*[18]

- Ipratropium bromide, solution, added to salbutamol solution.
  - Children: Ipratropium bromide 0.25mg/2ml; nebuliser solution: 2mL (0.25 mg) nebulised with salbutamol and made up to a total volume of 4mL with sodium chloride 0.9%.
  - Adults: Ipratropium bromide 0.5mg/2ml; nebuliser solution, 2 mL (0.5 mg) nebulised with salbutamol and made up to a total volume of 4mL with sodium chloride 0.9%. *LoE:IVb*[19]

**AND**

- Hydrocortisone IM/slow IV, immediately.
  - Children: 5 mg/kg immediately. See dosing table, pg 23.5. *LoE:IVb*[20]
  - Adults: 200 mg immediately. *LoE:IVb*[21]

**AND**

- Promethazine IM/slow IV.
  - Children > 2 years: 0.25 mg/kg. See dosing table, pg 23.8. *LoE::IVb*[22]
  - Adults: 25–50 mg.

### REFERRAL

All patients.
**Note:** Adrenaline (epinephrine) administration may have to be repeated due to its short duration of action. Observe closely during transport.

## 21.2.11 SEIZURES AND STATUS EPILEPTICUS

G41.0-2/G41.8-9
For description and general measures of seizures, see Section 15.3: Seizures.

### DESCRIPTION

This is a medical emergency and has the potential for causing high mortality.
Status epilepticus is a series of seizures following one another lasting >30 minutes with no intervening periods of recovery of consciousness. The seizure may be generalised or partial, convulsive or non-convulsive.
Do not wait for established status epilepticus to terminate convulsions. Convulsions lasting > 5 minutes should be terminated.

### GENERAL MEASURES

» Place the patient in a lateral (recovery) position.
» **Do not** place anything (spoon or spatula, etc.) in the patient's mouth.
» Do not try to open the patient's mouth.
» Maintain airway.
» Assist respiration and give high flow oxygen
» Prepare for intubation if sufficiently skilled in the procedure and relevant rescue devices are available.
» Check blood glucose (exclude hypoglycaemia).
» Monitor vital signs every 15 minutes.
» Establish an IV line.

### MEDICINE TREATMENT

Children < 12 years of age

- Midazolam, buccal, 0.5 mg/kg/dose. See dosing table, pg 23.7.
  - Use midazolam for injection 5 mg in 1 mL undiluted.
  - Draw up the required volume in a 5 mL syringe.
  - Remove needle then administer midazolam into the buccal cavity (between gum and cheeks).
  - If seizures persist for > 5 minutes, repeat the dose and refer urgently.
  - Note: Buccal midazolam should not be used in infants < 6 months of age.

**OR** *LoE:IIIa*[23]

- Midazolam, IM:
  - Child > 13 kg: midazolam, IM, 5 mg, repeat once after 5–10 minutes if still fitting.

**OR** *LoE:IIa*[24]

- Diazepam, rectal, 0.5 mg/kg/dose as a single dose. See dosing table, pg 23.4.
  - Use diazepam for injection 10 mg in 2 mL undiluted.
  - Draw up the required volume in a 2 mL syringe.
  - Remove needle then insert the whole barrel of the lubricated syringe into the rectum and inject the contents.
  - Remove syringe and hold buttocks together to minimise leakage.
  - Maximum dose: 10 mg in 1 hour.
  - May be repeated after 10 minutes if convulsions continue.
  - Expect a response within 1–5 minutes.

**CAUTION**
Benzodiazepines, can cause respiratory depression.
Monitor closely for respiratory depression. If this occurs, assist ventilation with bag-valve mask (1 breath every 3–5 seconds) and refer urgently.

If no response after two consecutive doses of either midazolam or diazepam, and if the convulsion has lasted more than 20 minutes:

**ADD**

- Phenobarbital, oral, crushed and given by nasogastric tube, 20 mg/kg as a single dose. See dosing table, pg 23.8. *LoE: IIIb*[25]

Adults

- Midazolam, IM, 10 mg, immediately.
  - Repeat once after 5–10 minutes if still fitting. *LoE: IIb*[26]

**OR**

- Midazolam, buccal, 10 mg using the parenteral formulation.
  - Repeat once after 5–10 minutes if still fitting. *LoE: IVb*

**OR**

- Diazepam, slow IV, 10 mg.
  - Administer at a rate not exceeding 5mg/minute.
  - Repeat within 5 minutes if needed.
  - Maximum dose: 20 mg within 1 hour.
  - Expect a response within 1–5 minutes. *LoE: IIIa*[27]

**CAUTION**
Benzodiazepines can cause respiratory depression.
Monitor closely for respiratory depression. If this occurs, assist ventilation with bag-valve mask (1 breath every 3-5 seconds) and refer urgently.
**Avoid** diazepam IM since absorption is slow and erratic.
**Do not** mix diazepam with other medicines in same syringe.

## REFERRAL

**Urgent**
Seizures that cannot be controlled.

**Non-urgent**
All patients once stabilised.

**Note:** Clinical notes describing medication administered, time, dose, and route of administration should accompany patients.

# 21.3 TRAUMA AND INJURIES

## 21.3.1 BITES AND STINGS

### 21.3.1.1 ANIMAL BITES

S01.0-9/S11.0-2/S11.7-9/S21.0-2/S21.7-9/S31.0-5/S31.7-8/S41.0-1/S41.7-8/S51.0/S51.7-9/S61.0-1/S61.7-9/S71.0-1/S71.7-8/S81.0/S81.7-9/S91.0-3/S91.7/T01.0-3/T01.6/T01.8-9/T09.1/T11.1/T13.1/T14.0-1/A82.0-1/A82.9/Z24.2/Z20.3 + External Cause Code (W,X,Y,Z)

**Note: Rabies and tetanus are notifiable medical conditions.**

#### DESCRIPTION

Animal bites may be caused by:

» Domestic animals e.g. horses, cows, dogs, cats.
» Wild animals e.g. jackals, mongooses (including meerkats), bats.

Animal bites may result in:

» Wound infection, often due to mixed aerobic and anaerobic infection.
» Puncture wounds.
» Tissue necrosis.
» Transmission of diseases, e.g. tetanus, rabies.

**NICD hotline for rabies advice: 0828839920**

**Suspected rabid bite**

Any mammal bite can transmit rabies. Rabies incubation period is at least 9–90 days, but could be much longer. In suspected rabies exposure of a person by a domestic animal, attempt to trace the source animal to determine likelihood of rabies. Observe the suspected rabid animal for abnormal behaviour for 10 days. If the animal remains healthy for 10 days, rabies is unlikely.

**Note:** If the animal has to be put down, care should be taken to preserve the brain, as the brain is required by the state veterinarian for confirmation of diagnosis. The animal must not be killed by shooting it in the head, as this will damage the brain.

| PATIENT WITH ANIMAL EXPOSURE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***Severity of exposure*** | **No direct contact** with animal (for example, being in the presence of a rabid animal or petting an animal) | Direct contact with animal but **no breach of skin, no bleeding** (for example bruising or superficial scratch) | Direct contact with animal with **breach of skin, any amount of bleeding, contact with mucosal membranes** (for example lick on/in eyes or nose)**, contact with broken skin** (for example licks on existing scratches), **any contact with a bat.** |
| ***Management based on severity of the exposure*** | Washing of exposed skin surfaces | Wound management<br>***AND***<br>Full course of rabies vaccine<br>(Rabies immunoglobulin, only if severely immuno-compromised) | Wound management<br>***AND***<br>Rabies immunoglobulin<br>***AND***<br>Full course of rabies vaccine |

Table 21.6: Algorithm for rabies post exposure prophylaxis (PEP)

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

**Wound management:**

Wash wound thoroughly with soap under running water for 15 minutes. *LoE: IVb*[28]

- Chlorhexidine 0.05%, aqueous solution.

Apply disinfectant if available:

- Povidone-iodine 10%, solution.

**CAUTION**

Primary suturing of wounds should be avoided unless for urgent haemostasis.

Clean wound thoroughly, dress (avoid compressive dressings), and review after 48 hours for secondary closure at that time.

**The following treatment may be commenced in facilities designated by Provincial/Regional Pharmaceutical Therapeutics Committees. If access to rabies vaccine and/or immunoglobulin is not immediately available refer urgently.**

**Immunocompromised individuals:**

Individuals with documented immunodeficiency, such as symptomatic HIV infection, patients with cancer on chemotherapy/radiotherapy, and patients on long-term corticosteroids dosed at 20 mg/day for ≥2 weeks, should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis and receive a complete course of PEP including RIG and 4 doses of rabies vaccine in all exposures with direct animal contact.

**Note:** HIV-infected individuals receiving ART who are clinically monitored and well managed are not considered immunocompromised. Such patients have been shown to respond normally to rabies vaccines.

**Rabies immunoglobulin (RIG):** *LoE: IVb*[29]

» Only indicated for:
  - Direct animal contact with breach of skin/ bleeding/ mucosal contact, immunocompetent patients
  - Any direct animal contact, immunocompromised patients
  - All bat exposures
» Patients who have received PEP or PrEP do not require RIG. Only wound treatment is required.
» Available from the nearest district hospital.
» If not immediately available, source and give as soon as possible.
» When 7 days have lapsed since the initial rabies vaccination, RIG is no longer indicated as the vaccine induced immune response will be effective at that time.
» Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound.
» It is **no longer** recommended to inject the remainder of the calculated RIG dose at a site distant to the wound.
» In the case of smaller wounds/areas where it is not possible to infiltrate the entire calculated dose, infiltrate as much as is anatomically feasible in and around the wound site/s without causing compartment syndrome.
» In case of large and multiple wounds, RIG can be diluted with sodium chloride 0.9% solution if necessary to ensure infiltration of all wounds.
» Follow with a complete course of vaccine.

- Human-derived rabies immunoglobulin (HRIG), IM 20 IU/kg. Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound.

*LoE:IVb*[30]

**OR**

- Equine-derived rabies Immunoglobulin (ERIG), IM 40 IU/kg. Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound.
  - Administer ERIG only in facilities where anaphylaxis or adverse reactions can be managed.(Refer to Section 21.2.10).

*LoE:IVb*[31]

| Product name | Max. dose | Description | Site of administration | Schedule |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ***HRIG*** | | | Infiltrate up to the maximum calculated dose in and around the wound site/s.<br><br>For smaller wounds where it is not possible to infiltrate all of the calculated dose, infiltrate as much as is anatomically feasible in and around the wound site/s. | On day 0 (when patient presents for first time)/ as soon as possible after exposure to be effective to neutralise virus.<br>When RIG is not available it should be sourced as a matter of urgency.<br>When 7 days have lapsed since initial rabies vaccination, RIG is no longer indicated. |
| Rabigam® | 20 IU/kg | 150 IU/mL (Supplied in 2 mL vial) | | |
| KamRAB® | 20 IU/kg | 150 IU/mL (Supplied in 2, 5 and 10 mL vials). | | |
| ***ERIG*** | | | | |
| Equirab® | 40 IU/kg | 200 IU/mL (Supplied in 5 mL vial). | | |

Table 21.7: Summary of regimen for HRIG and ERIG
*Source: NICD updated human rabies prophylaxis guideline. www.nicd.ac.za*

**Rabies vaccination:**

*LoE: IVb*[32]

» Only indicated for direct animal contact.
» Patients who have previously been fully immunised or who received PEP more than 3 months ago need only two doses: on Day 0 and Day 3.
» Patients who have received previous PEP or PrEP within the previous 3 months do not require vaccination against rabies. Only wound treatment is required.
» Available from the nearest district hospital.

Children

- Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM anterolateral thigh.
  - Day 0 – single dose
  - Day 3 – single dose
  - Day 7 – single dose
  - Between day 14-28 – single dose

Adults

- Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM deltoid.
  - Day 0 – single dose
  - Day 3 – single dose
  - Day 7 – single dose
  - Between day 14-28 – single dose

**CAUTION**
Do not administer rabies vaccine into buttocks (gluteus maximus).

**Tetanus prophylaxis if not previously immunised within the last 5 years:**
Z23.5

- Tetanus toxoid vaccine (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

**Note:** In a fully immunised person, tetanus toxoid vaccine or tetanus immunoglobulin may produce an unpleasant reaction, e.g. redness, itching, swelling or fever, but in the case of a severe injury the administration is justified.

**Antibiotic treatment (only for direct animal contact with broken skin, hand wounds):**

Adults and Children > 35 kg

- Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, oral, 875/125 mg 12 hourly for 5 days.

Children ≤ 35 kg

- Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, oral, 15–25 mg/kg/dose of amoxicillin component, 8 hourly for 5 days.

| **Weight** kg | **Dose mg** (amoxicillin component) | **Use one of the following** | | | **Age** months/years |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **Susp** 125/31.5 mg/5 mL | **Susp** 250/62.5 mg/5 mL | **Tablet** 500/125 mg/tab | |
| >3.5–5kg | 75 mg | 3 mL | 1.5 mL | – | >1–3 months |
| >5–7 kg | 100 mg | 4 mL | 2mL | – | >3–6 months |
| >7–9 kg | 150 mg | 6 mL | 3 mL | – | >6–12 months |
| >9–11 kg | 200 mg | 8 mL | 4 mL | – | >12–18 months |
| >11–14 kg | 250 mg | 10 mL | 5 mL | – | >18 months–3 years |
| >14–17.5 kg | 300 mg | 12 mL | 6 mL | – | >3–5 years |
| >17.5–25 | 375 mg | 15 mL | 7.5 mL | – | >5–7 years |
| >25–35 kg | 500 mg | 20 mL | 10 mL | 1 tablet | >7–11 years |

**Severe penicillin allergy:**
Z88.0

Adults and Children > 35 kg

- Macrolide, e.g.:
- Azithromycin, oral, 500 mg daily for 3 days.

Children

- Macrolide, e.g.:
- Azithromycin, oral, 10 mg/kg daily for 3 days. See dosing table pg 23.2.

**AND**

Adults

- Metronidazole, oral, 400 mg, 8 hourly for 5 days.

Children

- Metronidazole, oral, 7.5 mg/kg/dose 8 hourly for 5 days. See dosing table, pg 23.7.

## PREVENTION

» Regular vaccination of domestic cats and dogs.
» Pre-exposure vaccine may be given to those at risk, e.g. occupation, endemic areas, laboratories.

### REFERRAL
» Deep and large wounds requiring suturing.
» Shock and bleeding.
» Possible rabies exposure (for immunoglobulin and vaccination).
» Severe infected wounds or infected wounds not responding to oral antibiotics.
» Hand bites.

## 21.3.1.2 HUMAN BITES
S01.0-9/S11.0-2/S11.7-9/S21.0-2/S21.7-9/S31.0-5/S31.7-8/S41.0-1/S41.7-8/S51.0/S51.7-9/S61.0-1/S61.7-9/S71.0-1/S71.7-8/S81.0/S81.7-9/S91.0-3/S91.7/T01.0-3/T01.6/T01.8-9/T09.1/T11.1/T13.1/T14.0-1 + External Cause Code (W,X,Y,Z)

### DESCRIPTION
Human bites may be accidental or intentional (form of assault).
Human bites may result in:
» Wound infection, often due to mixed aerobic and anaerobic infection.
» Puncture wounds.
» Tissue necrosis.
» Transmission of diseases, e.g. HIV, hepatitis.

### MEDICINE TREATMENT
**Wound management:**
Wash wound thoroughly with soap under running water for 5–10 minutes.
- Chlorhexidine 0.05%, aqueous solution.

Apply disinfectant if available:
- Povidone-iodine 10%, solution.

**CAUTION**
Do not suture bite wounds unless on the head/face. Clean thoroughly, dress (avoid compressive dressings). Review after 48 hours for secondary closure at that time.

**Tetanus prophylaxis:**
Z23.5
If not previously immunised within the last 5 years:
- Tetanus toxoid (TT), IM, 0.5 mL. *LoE: IIIa*[33]

**Antibiotic treatment:**

Adults and Children > 35 kg
- Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid, oral, 875/125 mg 12 hourly for 5 days.

Children ≤ 35 kg
- Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid oral, 15–25 mg/kg/dose of amoxicillin component, 8 hourly for 5 days.

| Weight kg | Dose mg (amoxicillin component) | Use one of the following | | | Age months/years |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Susp 125/31.5 mg/5 mL | Susp 250/62.5 mg/5 mL | Tablet 500/125 mg/tab | |
| >3.5–5kg | 75 mg | 3 mL | 1.5 mL | – | >1–3 months |
| >5–7 kg | 100 mg | 4 mL | 2mL | – | >3–6 months |
| >7–9 kg | 150 mg | 6 mL | 3 mL | – | >6–12 months |
| >9–11 kg | 200 mg | 8 mL | 4 mL | – | >12–18 months |
| >11–14 kg | 250 mg | 10 mL | 5 mL | – | >18 months–3 years |
| >14–17.5 kg | 300 mg | 12 mL | 6 mL | – | >3–5 years |
| >17.5–25 | 375 mg | 15 mL | 7.5 mL | – | >5–7 years |
| >25–35 kg | 500 mg | 20 mL | 10 mL | 1 tablet | >7–11 years |

**Severe penicillin allergy:**
Z88.0

Adults and Children > 35 kg

- Macrolide, e.g.:

Azithromycin, oral, 500 mg daily for 3 days

Children

- Macrolide, e.g.:
- Azithromycin, oral, 10 mg/kg daily for 3 days. See dosing table pg 23.2.

**AND**

Adults

- Metronidazole, oral, 400 mg, 8 hourly for 5 days

Children

- Metronidazole, oral, 7.5 mg/kg/dose 8 hourly for 5 days. See dosing table, pg 23.7.

**Hepatitis B prophylaxis (if bite is severe enough to cause bleeding):**
Z29.8
See section 21.3.6.3: Post exposure prophylaxis, inadvertent (non-occupational).

**HIV prophylaxis**
The risk of HIV transmission through biting is negligible. Post-exposure prophylaxis is not indicated after a bite. *LoE: IIIb*[34]

## REFERRAL

» Deep and large wounds requiring suturing.
» Shock and bleeding.
» Severe infected wounds or infected wounds not responding to oral antibiotics.
» Hand bites.

## 21.3.1.3 INSECT STINGS, SCORPION STINGS AND SPIDER BITES

T63.2-4 + External Cause Code (V,W,X,Y)

**Poisons Information Helpline:0861555777**
See Section 21.3.3: Exposure to poisonous substances.

### DESCRIPTION

Spider bites and stings by bees, wasps, scorpions and other insects.
Symptoms are usually localised such as pain, redness, swelling and itching.

**Bees and wasps**

» Venom is usually mild but may provoke severe allergic reactions (see Section 21.2.10: Anaphylaxis).

**Spiders and scorpions**

» Most are non-venomous or mildly venomous, but some may be extremely venomous resulting in neurotoxicity and constitute a medical emergency.

### MEDICINE TREATMENT

**Emergency treatment:**
Treat anaphylaxis (bee/wasp stings). See Section 21.2.10: Anaphylaxis.

**Local symptoms:**

- Calamine lotion, apply when needed.

**If severe itch:**

Children

- Chlorphenamine, oral, 0.1 mg/kg/dose 6–8 hourly. See dosing table, pg 23.3.

Adults

- Chlorphenamine, oral, 4 mg, 6–8 hourly.

**AND**
If there is a wide local response to insect bite with inflamed lesion, see Section 5.10.4: Papular urticaria.

**Pain:**

Children

- Paracetamol, oral, 10–15 mg/kg/dose 6 hourly when required. See dosing table, pg 23.8.

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours).
  - Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

**Very painful scorpion stings:**

- Lidocaine 2%, 2 mL injected around the bite as a local anaesthetic.

Local application of ice, if tolerated.

**Cytotoxic lesions:**
Avoid giving prophylactic antibiotics for bites and stings.
If secondary skin infection (site red, swollen, hot, tender, pus may be present), manage as cellulitis. See Section 5.4.3: Cellulitis.

**Spider bites and scorpion stings:**
Tetanus prophylaxis:
Z23.5

If not immunised within the last 5 years: *LoE:IVb*[35]

- Tetanus toxoid vaccine (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

## REFERRAL

» For possible antivenom (neurotoxic spider bites or scorpion stings), if applicable, and intensive care, if necessary.
» Presence of systemic manifestations:
  - weakness
  - drooping eyelids
  - hypersalivation
  - sweating
  - difficulty in swallowing and speaking
  - double vision
  - muscle cramps
  - paraesthesia
  - difficulty in breathing
  - agitation/restlessness in children

  **Note:** Send the spider or scorpion with the patient, if available.
» Secondary infection of bite/sting that is not responding to 1st line antibiotics.

For guidance on the identification and clinical management of snake/spider/scorpion bites, contact:
**Poisons Information Helpline:** 0861555777

For procurement of snake/spider/scorpion antivenom, contact:
**South African Vaccine Producers (SAVP):**
Telephone (011) 386 6062/6063/6078 (0ffice hours only) or
Email: Benita.mouton@nhls.ac.za
In the rare event that antivenom needs to be released/procured afterhours:
Tel 071 680 9897

## 21.3.1.4 SNAKEBITES

T63.0 + (X20.99/W59.99)

## DESCRIPTION

Of all the snake species found in South Africa less than 10% are potentially harmful to humans. However, all snakebites should be considered dangerous until proven otherwise. In the majority of snakebite incidents, the offending snake is not identified.
South African poisonous snakes can be broadly divided into 3 groups according to the action of their venom, although there may be overlap of toxic effects from some snake venoms.

1. **Cytotoxic venoms:**

» Venom causes local tissue damage and destruction around the area of bite, including swelling, discolouration of the skin, and blister formation.
» Bite is painful and symptoms usually start within 10–30 minutes.
» Examples include: puff adder, Gaboon adder, Mozambique spitting cobra, other smaller adders and spitting cobras, stiletto snake, rinkhals (cytotoxic as well as neurotoxic).

2. **Neurotoxic venoms:**

» Neurotoxic venom causes weakness, ptosis, drooling, dysphagia, pins and needles, sweating, blurred vision, hypotension, paralysis of skeletal muscles and respiratory compromise.
» Bite is not as painful as cytotoxic venom bites.
» Symptoms usually start in 15–30 minutes.
» Examples include: black and green mamba, non-spitting cobras (Cape, forest, snouted), berg adder (neurotoxic as well as cytotoxic), rinkhals (cytotoxic as well as neurotoxic).

3. **Haemotoxic venoms:**

» Venom affects the clotting of blood causing bleeding tendency that may present within hours or up to a few days after the bite.
» Examples include: boomslang, vine snake

**Symptoms and signs of snakebite envenomation include:**

Local

» Bite marks with or without pain.
» Swelling around the bite, which may be severe with discolouration of skin and/or blister formation.
» Bleeding or oozing from bite site.

**Note**: the absence of bite marks does not exclude envenomation.

Systemic

» Nausea, vomiting.
» Sweating, hypersalivation and hypotension.
» Pins and needles.
» Skeletal muscle weakness (descending paralysis), which may cause:
  - drooping eyelids
  - double vision
  - difficulty in swallowing
  - difficulty in breathing
» Shock.
» Rarely bleeding (epistaxis, haematuria, haematemesis or haemoptysis).

**CAUTION**

Do not apply a tourniquet.
Do not apply a restrictive bandage to the head, neck or trunk.
Do not squeeze or incise the wound.
Do not attempt to suck the venom out.

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Remove clothing from site of the bite and jewellery e.g. rings if an extremity bite.
» Clean the wound thoroughly with chlorhexidine 0.05%, aqueous solution.
» Immobilise the affected limb with a splint or sling.
» Be prepared to support ventilation in neurotoxic bites as this can be life-saving.
» For neurotoxic bites only:
  - Immediately apply a wide crepe bandage firmly from just below the bite site up to 10–15 cm proximal to the bite site. Apply no tighter than for a sprained ankle.
» Obtain an accurate history e.g. time of the bite, type of snake.
» If the snake is unidentified, observe for 24 hours with repeated examinations. Absence of symptoms and signs for 6–8 hours usually indicates a harmless bite.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

**Venom in the eyes:**

S05.9 + (X20.99)

Irrigate the eye thoroughly for 15–20 minutes with water or sodium chloride, 0.9%.

- Local anaesthetic ophthalmic drops, e.g.:
- Tetracaine 1%, drops (if available), instil 1 drop into the affected eye(s) before irrigation. *LoE:IIIb*[36]

Refer the patient.

**Pain:**

- Non-opioid analgesics according to severity. See Section 20.3: Chronic non-cancer pain.

**Note:** The use of NSAIDs is not recommended due to the antiplatelet effect and the potential danger of renal failure in a hypotensive patient. *LoE:IVb*[37]

**Shock:**

Treat if present. See Section 21.2.9: Shock.

**Tetanus prophylaxis:**

Z23.5

If not previously immunised within the last 5 years:

- Tetanus toxoid (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

**Note:**

» **The majority of patients do not need and should not be given antivenom.**
» Adverse reactions to antivenom (including anaphylaxis) are common and may be severe.
» The dose of antivenom is the same for adults and children.
» Polyvalent antivenom does NOT include antivenom for berg adders or stiletto snakes. Management for these snakebites is symptomatic and supportive only.
» Antibiotics are seldom needed, except for secondary infection.

*LoE:IVb*[38]

Criteria for antivenom administration
» Signs of neurotoxicity.
» Positively identified puff adder, Gaboon adder, Mozambique spitting cobra or rinkhals bites AND evidence of severe progressive cytotoxicity.
» Unidentified snakebites and evidence of severe progressive cytotoxicity envenomation, i.e.:
  - swelling of whole hand or foot within 1 hour
  - swelling to the knee or elbow in <6 hours
  - swelling of the whole limb in <12 hours
  - swelling progression >2.5 cm per hour
  - a threatened airway due to swelling
  - evidence of complication, e.g. compartment syndrome

*LoE:IVb*[39]

## REFERRAL

» All patients with bites or likely bites even if puncture marks are not seen. If possible, take the dead snake to the referral centre for identification. Referral centre will determine if antivenom is indicated.
» If patient presents at the clinic with their own antivenom, contact the secondary level hospital for advice (antivenom should be given as soon as possible, however administration may be considered even as late as 48-72 hours after the bite, if there is continued clinical deterioration indicating ongoing venom activity).

For guidance on the identification and clinical management of snake/spider/scorpion bites, contact:
**Poisons Information Helpline:** 0861555777

For procurement of snake/spider/scorpion antivenom, contact:
**South African Vaccine Producers (SAVP):**
Telephone (011) 386 6062/6063/6078 (0ffice hours only) or
Email: Benita.mouton@nhls.ac.za
In the rare event that antivenom needs to be released/procured afterhours:
Tel 071 680 9897

## 21.3.2 BURNS

T30.0-3/T31.0-9 + (Y34.99)

## DESCRIPTION

Burns lead to skin and soft tissue injury and may be caused by:
» heat, e.g. open flame, hot liquids, hot steam,
» chemical compounds,
» physical agents, e.g. electrical/lightning) or
» radiation.

The extent and depth may vary from superficial (epidermis) to full-thickness burns of the skin and underlying tissues.
Initially, burns are usually sterile.

| Depth of burn wound | Surface /colour | Pain sensation/healing |
|---|---|---|
| Superficial or epidermal | Dry, minor blisters, erythema | » Painful<br>» Heals within 7 days |
| Partial thickness superficial or superficial dermal | Blisters, moist | » Painful<br>» Heals within 10–14 days |
| Partial thickness deep or deep dermal | Moist white or yellow slough, red mottled | » Less painful<br>» Heals within a month or more<br>» Generally needs surgical debridement and skin graft |
| Full thickness (complete loss of skin) | Dry, charred whitish, brown or black | » Painless, firm to touch<br>» Healing by contraction of the margins<br>» Generally needs surgical debridement and skin graft |

Table 21.8: Assessment of burns

## EMERGENCY TREATMENT

Follow the 7C's:

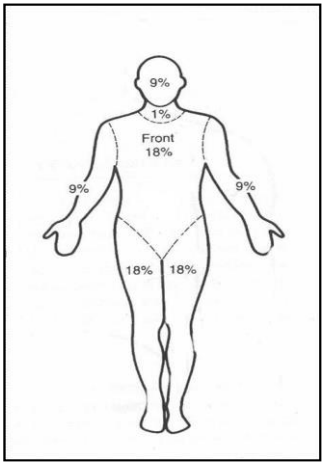
» Clothing: remove non-sticking clothing especially if hot or smouldering or constrictive (e.g. rings).
» Cool: with tap water for 30 minutes.
» Clean: with chlorhexidine.
» Cover: with a non-adherent dressing.
» Comfort: provide pain relief.
» Carbon dioxide poisoning: consider if enclosed fire, decreased LOC, disorientation.
» Consider inhalation injury if: carbonaceous (black-coloured) sputum, shortness of breath, perioral burns, hoarse voice, stridor. Discuss with referral centre as early intubation may be needed.

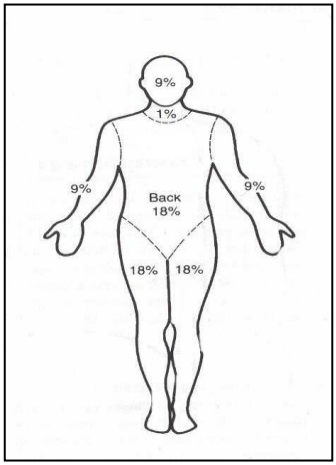
| Child and adult percentages | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Age** years | **Head + neck Front + back** | **Torso Front** | **Torso Back** | **Leg + foot Front + back** | **Arm+ hand Front+ back** |
| <1 | 18% | 18% | 18% | 14% | 9% |
| 1-<2 | 17% | 18% | 18% | 14.5% | 9% |
| 2-<3 | 16% | 18% | 18% | 15% | 9% |
| 3-<4 | 15% | 18% | 18% | 15.5% | 9% |
| 4-<5 | 14% | 18% | 18% | 16% | 9% |
| 5-<6 | 13% | 18% | 18% | 16.5% | 9% |
| 6-<7 | 12% | 18% | 18% | 17% | 9% |
| 7-<8 | 11% | 18% | 18% | 17.5% | 9% |
| ≥ 8 | 10% | 18% | 18% | 18% | 9% |

Table 21.9: Estimated body surface area (BSA) percentages

**The figures below are used to calculate body surface area %*.**
**These diagrams indicate percentages for the whole leg/arm/head (and neck in adults) not just the front or back.**
**In children the palm of the hand, including the fingers, is 1%.**

**Children 8 years and adults**




**Children < 8 years of age**

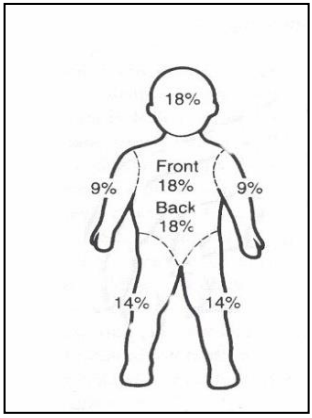



Figure 21.6: Calculating body surface area for management of burns
* Source: Karpelowsky JS, Wallis L, Madaree A, Rode H; South African Burn Society..South African Burn Society burn stabilisation protocol. S Afr Med J. 2007. Aug;97(8):574-7. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17966146

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

### Fluid replacement

Burns ≤ 10% Total Body Surface Area (TBSA):
Oral fluids.

Burns > 10% of TBSA:

- IV fluid for resuscitation, replacement, and maintenance.

**Note:** IV fluid replacement is very important in large burns. However, if unable to obtain IV access, give fluids orally or via NGT and transfer urgently.

### Calculation of fluid replacement

**Fluids in adults:**

If shocked, see Section 21.2.9: Shock.
First 24 hours:

- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV.
  - Calculate total fluid requirement in 24 hours:
    Total % burn x weight (kg) x 4 mL.
  - Give half this volume in the first 8 hours.
  - Administer remaining fluid volume in next 16 hours.

**Note:** If urine output is not adequate, increase fluids for the next hour by 50%. Continue at a higher rate until urine output is adequate, then resume normal calculated rate.

**Fluids in children:**

**Note:** Avoid circumferential taping when securing infusion lines, as oedema under the eschar may decrease the venous return.

» **First 8 hours of fluid replacement in children**

| Weight **kg** | Fluid volume (mL per hour) for the 1st 8 hours in burns of > 10% in PHC clinics while awaiting transfer:<br>• **0.9% Sodium chloride with 100 mL of 50% dextrose added to each litre or 10 mL of 50% dextrose added to each 100 mL.** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Burns percentage of total body area** | | | |
| | 10–20% | >20–30% | >30–40% | >40% |
| >2–2.5 kg | 15 | 19 | 23 | 28 |
| >2.5–3.5 kg | 20 | 25 | 31 | 36 |
| >3.5–5 kg | 28 | 36 | 44 | 51 |
| >5–7 kg | 40 | 50 | 62 | 73 |
| >7–9 kg | 53 | 70 | 84 | 100 |
| >9–11 kg | 67 | 85 | 105 | 120 |
| >11–14 kg | 82 | 105 | 125 | 150 |
| >14–17.5 kg | 95 | 125 | 155 | 185 |
| >17.5–25 kg | 115 | 155 | 190 | 235 |
| >25–35 kg | 147 | 200 | 250 | 310 |

| » **Next 16 hours of fluid replacement in chidlren** | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Weight **kg** | Fluid volume (mL per hour) for the next 16 hours in burns of > 10% in PHC clinics if transfer has not been accomplished in the 1st 8 hours:<br>• **0.9% Sodium chloride with 100 mL of 50% dextrose added to each litre or 10 mL of 50% dextrose added to each 100 mL.** | | | |
| | **Burns percentage of total body area** | | | |
| | 10–20% | >20–30% | >30–40% | >40% |
| >2–2.5 kg | 12 | 14 | 17 | 19 |
| >2.5–3.5 kg | 16 | 19 | 22 | 25 |
| >3.5–5 kg | 23 | 27 | 31 | 35 |
| >5–7 kg | 33 | 38 | 44 | 49 |
| >7–9 kg | 43 | 50 | 58 | 65 |
| >9–11 kg | 54 | 64 | 72 | 82 |
| >11–14 kg | 64 | 76 | 86 | 97 |
| >14–17.5 kg | 75 | 91 | 104 | 118 |
| >17.5–25 kg | 91 | 110 | 129 | 148 |
| >25–35 kg | 110 | 138 | 165 | 190 |

Table 21.10: Replacement fluids for burns >10% BSA in children

**Pain:**

Children

- Paracetamol, oral, 10–15 mg/kg/dose 6 hourly when required. See dosing table, pg 23.8.

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours)
  - Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

**Severe pain:**

See Section 20.3: Chronic non-cancer pain.

**Wound cleansing:**

Clean the burn wound gently.
Sodium chloride 0.9% or clean water.

**Burn dressing:**

Keep the wound clean and dress with sterile dressings.

For patients requiring referral

» If within 12 hours, transfer patient wrapped in clean dry sheet and blankets.
» If delayed by >12 hours, paraffin gauze dressing and dry gauze on top.
» For full thickness and extensive burns cover with a paraffin gauze occlusive dressing. Cover the dressing with plastic wrap (e.g. cling film).

*LoE:IVb*

For patients not requiring transfer (burns that can be treated at home)

» Paraffin gauze dressing.

If infected burn

- Povidone-iodine 5%, cream, applied daily.

*LoE:IIIb*[40]

**Tetanus prophylaxis:**
Z23.5
If not vaccinated within the last 5 years
- Tetanus toxoid (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

See Section 21.3.1.1: Animal bites or 21.3.1.2: Human bites, for detailed indications and management principles.

### REFERRAL

» All children <1 year of age.
» All burns >5% in children 1–2 years of age.
» Full thickness burns of any size in any age group.
» Partial thickness burns >10% TBSA.
» Burns of special areas – face, hands, feet, genitalia, perineum and major joints.
» Electrical burns, including lightning injury.
» Severe chemical burns.
» Inhalation injury – fire or scald injury.
» Circumferential burns of the limbs or chest.
» Burn injury in a patient with pre-existing medical disorders which could complicate management, prolong recovery or affect mortality.
» Any patient with burns and concomitant trauma.
» Suspected child abuse.
» Burns exceeding the capabilities of the referring centre.
» Septic burn wounds.
» Consider rehabilitation services for reducing the risk of contractures and disfigurement.

## 21.3.3 EXPOSURE TO POISONOUS SUBSTANCES

T36.0-9/T37.0-5/T37.8-9/T38.0-9/T39.0-4/T39.8-9/T40.0-9/T41-0-5/T42.0-8/T43.0-6/T43.8-9/ 4.0-9/T45.0-9/T46.0-9/T47.0-9/T48-0-7/T49.0-9/T50.0-9/T51.0-3/T51.8-9/T52.0-4/T52.8-9/T53.0-9/T54.0-3/T54.9/T55/T56.0-9/T57.0-3/T57.8-9/T58/T59.0-9/T60.0-4/T60.8-9/T65.0-6/T65.8-9+ (X44.99/X49.99/X64.99/X69.99/Y14.99/Y19.99)

**Note: Poisoning from all pesticides (i.e. agricultural stock remedies) is a notifiable medical condition. Please visit www.nicd.ac.za for further information.**

| POISON INFORMATION CENTRES | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Poisons Information Helpline** (national service) | 24 hours/day | 0861 555 777 |
| **Red Cross War Memorial Children's Hospital Poisons Information Centre**<br>Email: poisonsinformation@uct.ac.za<br>http://www.paediatrics.uct.ac.za/poisons-information-centre | | |
| **Tygerberg Poisons Information Centre**<br>Email: toxicology@sun.ac.za<br>www.sun.ac.za/poisoncentre | | |
| **University of the Free State Poison Control and Medicine Information Centre** | 24 hours/day | 082 491 0160 |
| Telephone numbers tested April 2022 | | |

Table 21.11: Poison information centre(s)

The Afritox database is available free of charge to public hospitals in South Africa: see www.afritox.co.za for information on how to access the database. If the above centres cannot be contacted, enquire at the nearest trauma and emergency unit.

## DESCRIPTION

Acute poisoning is a common medical emergency. Poisoning may occur by ingestion, inhalation, or absorption through skin or mucus membranes. Frequently encountered poisons include:

» analgesics
» anti-epileptic agents
» antidepressants and sedatives
» anti-infectives
» pesticides
» volatile hydrocarbons, e.g. paraffin
» household cleaning agents
» antihypertensive and anti-diabetic agents
» vitamins and minerals, especially iron in children

Signs and symptoms vary according to the nature of poisoning.

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Establish and maintain the airway.
» Ensure adequate ventilation and oxygenation.
» Treat shock. See Section 21.1: Cardiopulmonary arrest.
» Take an accurate history.
» Obtain collateral information, especially in patients with impaired consciousness.
» A special effort should be made to obtain tablets, packets, containers, etc. to identify poisons involved.
» Document, and respond to, abnormalities of:
  - pulse rate
  - blood pressure
  - respiratory rate
  - level of consciousness
  - pupillary size and reaction
  - oxygenation

Remove the patient from the source of poison:

» *Topical exposure*:
  - If skin contact has occurred, especially pesticides, wash the skin with soap and water, ensuring carer has protective measures, e.g., gloves, gowns, masks, etc.
  - Remove contaminated clothes in organophosphate poisoning
  - Remove eye contaminants, especially alkalis, acids, and other irritants, by continuous irrigation of the eye with sterile water or normal saline for 15–20 minutes. Analgesic eye drops may be required to perform this adequately.
» *Inhalation of poisonous gases*: move the patient to fresh air.

Contact the Poisons Information Helpline or nearest hospital for advice.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

**Ingested poisons**

- Activated charcoal.
  - Administer only when the airway is protected (i.e. patient is fully awake and cooperative, or intubated with a depressed level of consciousness).
  - Administer within 1 hour of ingestion of toxin, unless poison is a substance that delays gastric emptying.

| Charcoal may be useful if these poisons are taken in toxic dose | Poisons where charcoal is ineffective and should not be given |
|---|---|
| » carbamazepine, barbiturates, phenytoin<br>» dapsone, quinine<br>» theophylline<br>» salicylates<br>» mushroom poisoning (Amanita phalloides)<br>» slow release preparations<br>» digoxin<br>» beta-blockers<br>» NSAIDs | » ethanol, methanol, ethylene glycol<br>» brake fluid<br>» petroleum products (e.g. petrol or paraffin)<br>» iron salts<br>» lead, mercury, arsenic<br>» lithium<br>» strong acids or alkalis<br>» other corrosive agents (e.g. household detergents) |

Table 21.12: Activated charcoal for poisoning(s) *LoE:IIIb*[41]

Children:

- Activated charcoal, oral, 1 g/kg mixed as a slurry with water. See dosing table, pg 23.1.

Adults:

- Activated charcoal, oral, 50 g (36 level medicine measures) diluted in 100 mL water.
  - When mixing, add a small amount of water to charcoal in a container.
  - Cap and shake container to make a slurry and then dilute further.

**Specific poisons and antidotes:**

**Carbon monoxide poisoning**

T58 + (X49.99/X69.99/Y19.99)

For hypoxia:

- Oxygen, 100% by non-rebreather mask.

**Organophosphate and carbamate poisoning**

T60.0 + (X48.99/X68.99/Y18.99)

» **Note**: Healthcare workers should wear personal protective equipment and all caregivers should avoid having skin contact with the poison or the patient's bodily fluids e.g. vomitus, faeces. If staff come into contact with body fluids, wash off immediately.

» Decontamination procedures for the patient should only be done once the patient is fully resuscitated. Remove patient's clothes and wash the body with soap and water. Place clothes in bags and seal.

» Signs and symptoms of poisoning include:
  - diarrhoea and vomiting
  - hypotension
  - bradycardia
  - muscle twitching
  - coma
  - hypersecretions (hypersalivation, sweating, lacrimation, rhinorrhoea)
  - bronchospasm and bronchorrhoea
  - weakness
  - pinpoint pupils
  - confusion
  - convulsions

» Protect airway if GCS <8.

» Suction secretions frequently.

» Intubate and ventilate if hypoxia, hypercarbia, or decreased respiratory effort.

» Start atropine antidote immediately.

For bronchorrhoea, bronchospasm or bradycardia:
Children:

- Atropine bolus, IV,0.05 mg/kg/dose. See dosing table, pg 23.2. *LoE:IVb*[42]

Adults:

- Atropine bolus, IV, 2 mg *LoE:IIIa*[43]

In both adults and children:

- Reassess after 3–5 minutes for evidence of atropinisation as indicated by reduced bronchial secretions, improvement of oxygenation, and decreased oxygen requirements.
- Give repeated atropine boluses incrementally doubling the dose until adequate clinical response achieved, e.g. 2 mg, 4 mg, 8 mg, 16 mg etc.
  - If no clinical response, give double the dose.
  - If some response, give the same or reduced dose.
- Continue to reassess frequently as additional doses may be required.

**Note:** Refer all patients urgently but only when stable.

**Poisoning from all pesticides (i.e. agricultural stock remedies) is a notifiable medical condition. Please visit www.nicd.ac.za for further information.**

**Opioid overdose**

T40.0-9 + (X42.99/X62.99/Y12.99)

» Respiratory support is the mainstay of treatment. Give naloxone for severe poisoning only (i.e. patients requiring ventilatory support) or as a single test dose for uncertain diagnosis.
  - If respiration adequate, observe the patient in a monitored setting and reassess frequently.
  - If patient is apnoeic or has slow/shallow respirations, assist ventilation with bag-valve mask attached to supplemental oxygen, whilst administering naloxone as described below. If GCS < 8, protect airway and consider intubation if persistent respiratory depression.

- Naloxone, IV (preferable) or IM

| | **Initial dose (IV/IM)** | **Repeat dose:** Reassess every 2 minutes. If breathing still inadequate, give further naloxone every 2–3 minutes. |
|---|---|---|
| **Children** | • 0.1 mg/kg immediately | Repeat 0.1 mg/kg (maximum 2 mg/dose), up to total dose of 10 mg. *LoE:IIIb*[44] |
| **Adults** | • 0.4 mg immediately | Double the dose each time (e.g.: 0.8 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg), up to total dose of 10 mg. *LoE:IVb*[45] |

- Naloxone has a short duration of action (45 minutes) - continue to monitor closely as further doses of naloxone may be needed while awaiting and during transport.
- In patients addicted to opioids, naloxone may precipitate an acute withdrawal syndrome after several hours. This must not prevent the use of naloxone.
- Refer all patients.

**Paracetamol poisoning**
T39.1 + (X40.99/X60.99/Y10.99)
All symptomatic patients or those with a history of significant single ingestion (≥ 200 mg/kg or 10 g, whichever is less) should be referred urgently for paracetamol blood level (taken at least 4 hours post-ingestion) and consideration of N-acetylcysteine.

Where referral is delayed:
- N-acetylcysteine, oral, 140 mg/kg immediately.
  - Followed by 70 mg/kg 4 hourly, for seventeen doses. *LoE:IIIb*[46]

**Note:**
» Avoid giving oral N-acetylcysteine together with activated charcoal, as systemic absorption and effect of N-acetylcysteine is reduced. *LoE:IIIb*[47]
» Anaphylactoid reactions to N-acetylcysteine do occur and the loading dose should preferably be administered in a monitored area. *LoE:IIIb*[48]

**Toxic alcohols (ethylene glycol and methanol poisoning)**
» Refer all cases
» See Adult Hospital chapter 19 Poisonings section 19.17.2

### REFERRAL
» All intentional overdoses.
» All symptomatic patients.
» All children in whom toxicity can be expected, e.g. ingestion with: *LoE:IVb*[49]
  - paracetamol ≥ 200 mg/kg or 10 g (whichever is less)
  - anti-epileptics
  - warfarin
  - anticholinergics
  - antihypertensives
  - tricyclic antidepressants
  - sulphonylureas (antidiabetic agents)
  - paraffin (unless patient has a normal respiratory rate after 6 hours)
  - iron tablets
  - pesticides

If in doubt, consult the referral hospital or Poisons Information Helpline.
**Note:** Send the following to hospital with the patient:
» detailed referral letter with all appropriate clinical details. Ensure to include time of ingestion and treatment received.
» a sample of the poison or the empty poison container

## 21.3.4 EYE, CHEMICAL BURNS
(See Chapter 18: Eye conditions).

## 21.3.5 EYE INJURY, FOREIGN BODY
(See Chapter 18: Eye conditions).

## 21.3.6 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS

### 21.3.6.1 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, OCCUPATIONAL

Z20.6 + Z20.5 + (Z57.8+X58.92+Z29.8)

#### DESCRIPTION

Post exposure prophylaxis may prevent the risk of acquiring HIV and hepatitis B following a significant occupational exposure to infectious material from a patient (includes blood, CSF, semen, vaginal secretions and synovial/pleural/ pericardial/ peritoneal/amniotic fluid).

The risk of acquiring HIV following occupational exposure is estimated at 0.3%.

There is a higher risk when:

» the injury is deep or
» involves a hollow needle or
» if the source patient is more infectious, e.g.: WHO stage 4 defining illness or known to have a high HIV viral load, i.e. >100 000 copies/mL, seroconversion illness.

#### GENERAL MEASURES

» Where the source patient is on ARVs or has been on ARVs, initiate prophylaxis and seek expert opinion. An extra blood sample (unclotted, EDTA) of the source patient should be stored in case of need for further resistance testing.
» Other blood borne infections that can be transmitted include hepatitis C and syphilis. Test all source patients (see monitoring table).
» Offer comprehensive and confidential pre-test HIV counselling.
» Advise HCW about the need to take precautions, e.g. condom use (for 4 months), to prevent HIV and HBV transmission to sexual partners.
» Document occupational exposures adequately for possible subsequent compensation.

*LoE:IVb*[50]

#### INVESTIGATIONS

| | Source patient | Exposed health care worker | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Baseline** | **Baseline** | **2 weeks** | **6 weeks** | **4 months** |
| **HIV** | Rapid test **PLUS** ELISA | Rapid test **PLUS** ELISA | | ELISA | ELISA |
| **Hepatitis B** | Surface antigen | Surface antibody** | | | Surface antigen and surface antibody** |
| **Hepatitis C** | HCV antibody | HCV antibody* | | HCV PCR* | |
| **Syphilis** | RPR/ TP antibody | RPR/TP antibody* | | | RPR/TP antibody* |
| **Creatinine** | | If TDF part of PEP | If TDF part of PEP | | |
| **FBC** | | If AZT part of PEP | If AZT part of PEP | | |

*Only if source patient was positive (in the case of syphilis, source patient must be RPR positive)
**Only if source patient was positive AND health care worker unvaccinated or HBsAb <10 units/mL
Table 21.13: Investigations and monitoring in occupational exposures

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

**1. Prevent HIV:**

Z20.6 + (Z57.8+X58.92+Z29.8)

» Initiate HIV PEP immediately after the injury - within 72 hours. Do not wait for the confirmatory test results on the source patient and health care worker.

» If higher risk exposure (defined above) consider initiation of treatment beyond 72 hours, as the risks of prophylaxis in this setting may outweigh the benefits. Avoid initiating PEP beyond 7 days after exposure.

**Note:** HIV PEP is **not** indicated if:

» HCW exposed to body fluids which carry no risk of infection, e.g. vomitus, urine, faeces or saliva.

» HCW is HIV-infected. Stop PEP if HIV test of the health care worker is positive at the time of the injury.

» The source is HIV sero-negative unless there are features suggesting sero-conversion illness.
- Continue prophylaxis until the results of additional tests are available.
- These cases should be discussed with virologists.

| Exposure | HIV Status of source patient | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Negative** | **Unknown or Positive** |
| **Intact skin** | no PEP | no PEP |
| **Mucosal splash**<br>**or**<br>**non-intact skin**<br>**or**<br>**percutaneous injury** | no PEP | PEP:<br>• TDF+3TC+DTG<br>**OR**<br>• 3-drug regimen |

Table 21.14: PEP for healthcare worker following occupational HIV exposure.

When PEP is indicated (administered preferably as a fixed-dose combination):

- Tenofovir (TDF), oral, 300 mg daily for 4 weeks (provided baseline eGFR is >50 mL/minute).

**AND**

- Lamivudine (3TC), oral, 300 mg daily for 4 weeks

**AND**

- Dolutegravir (DTG), oral 50 mg once daily for 4 weeks. *LoE:IIIa*[51]

If DTG is not tolerated:

- Tenofovir (TDF), oral, 300 mg daily for 4 weeks (provided baseline eGFR is >50 mL/minute).

**AND**

- Emtricitabine (FTC), oral, 200 mg daily for 4 weeks.

**AND** *LoE:IIIb*[52]

- Atazanavir/ritonavir 300/100 mg daily for 4 weeks.

**OR**

- Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r) 200/50 mg, oral, 2 tablets 12 hourly for 4 weeks.

If tenofovir is contraindicated or if source patient is known to be on a failing tenofovir based regimen, replace tenofovir and emtricitabine with:

- Zidovudine (AZT), oral, 300 mg 12 hourly for 4 weeks.

**AND**

- Lamivudine (3TC), oral, 150 mg 12 hourly for 4 weeks.

**Note:** Adverse effects of PEP:

» PEP is generally not well tolerated. Adverse effects occur in about half of cases and therapy is discontinued in about a third. Efavirenz is not recommended as it is very poorly tolerated in PEP.

» TDF is contra-indicated in renal disease or with concomitant use of nephrotoxic medicines, e.g. aminoglycosides (check baseline creatinine clearance). Where TDF is contraindicated, switch to AZT. If AZT is not tolerated, consult or refer for further management.

» Zidovudine often causes nausea and headache and so should only be given if TDF is contraindicated.

» If dolutegravir is not tolerated, give ATV/r as the first choice protease inhibitor as LPV/r frequently causes gastrointestinal side effects. ATV/r may commonly cause jaundice (i.e. unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia without hepatitis) which is harmless.

» If the source patient is known to be on a failing ART regimen, modification of the PEP regimen may be required. Consultation with a virologist or infectious diseases physician is recommended for advice on which antiretroviral medicines to use for PEP

» If the patient is on AZT or stavudine then TDF should be used.

» Patients on a failing second line ART regimen almost always have no resistance to protease inhibitors, so ATV/r or LPV/r should still be effective.

## 2. Prevent hepatitis B

Decide on what treatment to give the exposed person according to the vaccination status (and antibody response) of the exposed person, as well as the HBsAg results of the source patient, if known. *LoE:IVb*[53]

**PEP following hepatitis B exposure:** *LoE:IVb*[54]

Z20.5 + (Z57.8+X58.92+Z29.8)

| Vaccination status and antibody response status of HCW | Source patient status & treatment | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **HBsAg positive** | **HBsAg negative** | **HBsAg unknown** |
| Unvaccinated<br>**OR**<br>vaccination incomplete | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Hep B vaccine<br>(3 doses at monthly intervals) | • Initiate Hep B vaccination<br>(month 0, 1 and 6) | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Hep B vaccine<br>(3 doses at monthly intervals) |
| Vaccinated<br>**AND**<br>HBsAb ≥10 units/mL# | No treatment | No treatment | No treatment |
| Vaccinated<br>**AND**<br>HBsAb <10 units/mL | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Repeat Hep B vaccine<br>(3 doses at monthly intervals) | • Initiate Hep B vaccination<br>(month 0, 1 and 6) | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Repeat Hep B vaccine<br>(3 doses at monthly intervals) |

Table 21.15: PEP for healthcare workers following hepatitis B exposure

* HBIG and first dose of vaccine to be given simultaneously, but at different sites.
# If the delay in obtaining HBsAb results is more than 7 days initiate treatment as for vaccinated AND HBsAb < 10 units/mL.
After vaccination ensure the health care worker has a HBsAb ≥ 10 units/mL 1 – 2 months after the last vaccine dose.

## REFERRAL

**Note:** Refer if there are inadequate resources with regard to:
» counselling
» laboratory for testing
» medico-legal examination
» medicine treatment

# 21.3.6.2 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, RAPE AND SEXUAL ASSAULT

Z29.8 + Z20.5 + Z20.2 + Z20.6

## DESCRIPTION

Sexual offences are of grave concern and in particular to the most vulnerable persons including women, children and disabled persons. Sexual offences are physically and psychologically damaging to victims.
The definitions of sexual offences are within the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Act, No 32 of 2007., The ability to consent to a sexual act depends on the competence of the person to give consent and be knowledgeable of the consequences of that act - including the risk of contracting sexually transmitted diseases such as HIV.

## GENERAL MEASURES

» Sexual offence victims must be regarded as emergencies but do not displace life-threatening management of other cases.
» Ensure appropriate management is in place for every case. So called “cold cases” (> 72 hours after the incident) may be managed medically and given an appointment for medico-legal investigation.
» If the victim wants to open a case, the Family Violence, Child Protection and Sexual Offences Unit (FCS) must be phoned and requested to come to the hospital.
» Cases must be opened in all cases of suspected or alleged rape/sexual abuse in children.

**Offer 1st dose of antiretroviral PEP in all cases of suspected rape - the following matters can be resolved in due course:**

*HIV test*

» Determine the patient’s HIV status before initiating PEP.
  - Prophylaxis given to a previously infected HIV person will have no clinical benefit and may lead to the development of viral resistance. Provide counselling and manage accordingly.
» Obtain informed consent from the patient and written consent from the parent in case of minors before HIV testing and giving the full course of treatment.
» Consent for HIV testing in children can be given by:
  - Children who are competent to give consent and are:

(i) ≥ 12 years of age; or
(ii) < 12 years of age and of sufficient maturity to understand the benefits, risks and social implications of such a test.
- Parents or caregivers of children who are not competent to sign consent (but the child should have this explained to them so they understand what is happening, appropriate to their age and development).
- The clinical head of the institution, where a competent person is not available to give consent for HIV testing and PEP (alleged rape in children is a medical emergency).

» Opting for immediate HIV testing remains the patient's choice.
- If the patient declines, give a 3–day starter pack of PEP and encourage the patient to reconsider testing within those 3 days.
- **No further PEP should be given in the case of continued refusal of HIV testing in adults, in children where the parent unreasonably refuses PEP this may be taken further.**
- If in doubt about the indications for HIV PEP, give PEP.

» A patient presenting after 72 hours since the alleged incident should not be given PEP, but should be counselled about the possible risk of transmission.
- HIV testing should still be offered at the time of presentation and 4 months later.

» If the HIV Elisa/Rapid test is positive in sexually abused children <18 months of age, perform HIV PCR to confirm if HIV infection is truly present.

» If HIV-uninfected or if the child has no access to immediate HIV PCR results, they should receive prophylaxis (until the HIV PCR result is obtained).

*Pregnancy test*

» Perform a pregnancy test in adult and pubertal girls to exclude pregnancy before initiating post exposure contraception and STI prophylaxis.
- Pregnant rape patients should be referred.

*Initial counselling*

Counsel all victims of sexual offences and their caregivers in the case of children

» Explain the side effects of ARVs, e.g. tiredness, nausea and flu-like symptoms.

» Use condoms for 4 months.

» Avoid blood or tissue donation for 6 months.

» Emphasise the importance of compliance with ARV PEP.

» Provide psychosocial support pertaining to:
- Restoring control of the victim by avoiding secondary traumatisation, and give choices and participation in treatment decisions.
- Medical risks, e.g. transmission of sexually transmitted infections including HIV, syphilis, hepatitis-B and C.
- Risk of pregnancy.
- Psycho-emotional-social effects of the sexual assault according to their level of understanding and maturity.

### Follow-up support

» Discuss issues relating to stress management at subsequent visits.

» Inform the patient of the signs and symptoms of post-traumatic stress syndrome (PTSD), that may eventually cause exhaustion and illness. These include:

- general irritability
- trembling
- pain in neck and/or lower back
- change in appetite
- change in sleep pattern

### Medico-legal assessment of injuries

» Complete appropriate required forms and registers.

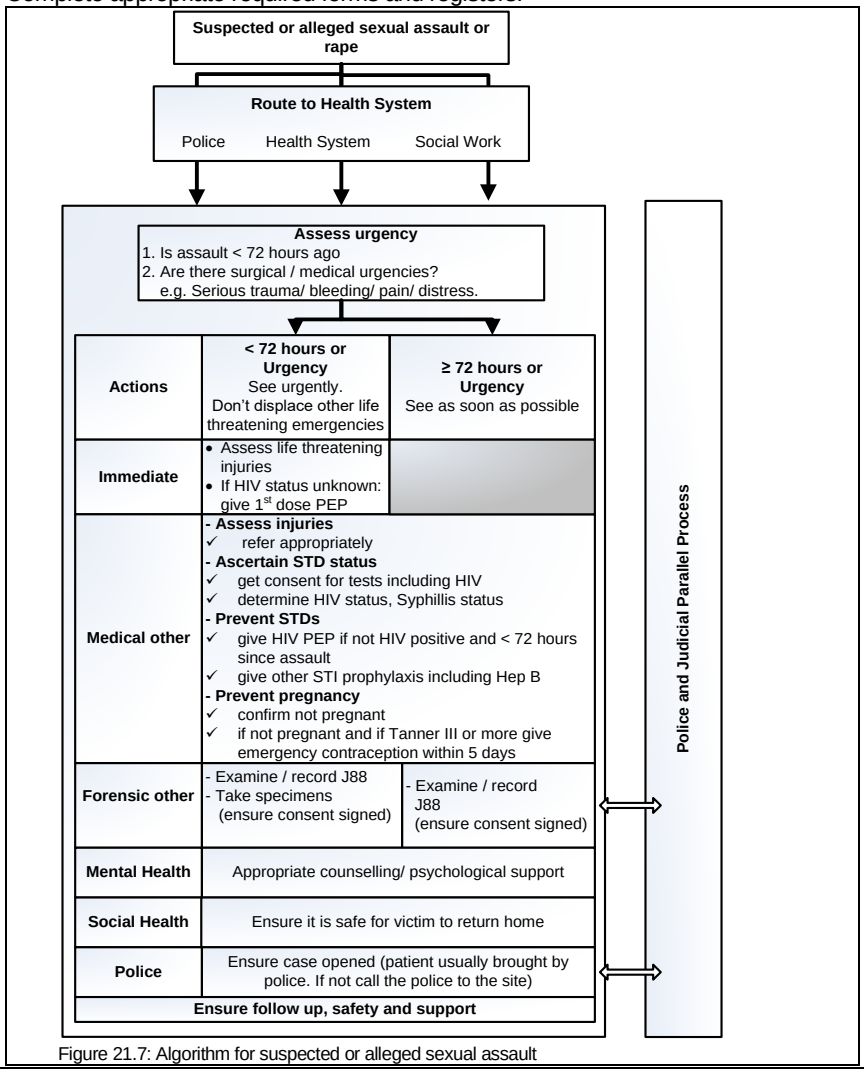



Figure 21.7: Algorithm for suspected or alleged sexual assault

## INVESTIGATIONS

» Voluntary rapid HIV testing should be made available and should be done on all opting for PEP.
» Further baseline and follow-up investigations are the same as for occupational HIV exposure, with the addition of pregnancy testing in all women and female adolescents prior to post exposure contraception. See section 21.6.3.1 Post-exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

Prevent the following:
1. HIV – PEP
2. HIV – PrEP
3. Hepatitis B
4. Pregnancy
5. STIs

**Note:**
» Obtain consent for HIV testing from all patients before initiating PEP.
» Offer PEP if the patient presents within 72 hours of being raped and is HIV-uninfected or HIV status is unknown.
» Initiate therapy as early as possible after the exposure to maximize the chance of effective prophylaxis.
» It is important to manage the medical condition before medico-legal examination. Most of these will require referral.
» If, for practical reasons, a person cannot return for the 3-day follow up, a 28-day course of ART should be provided.

**1. HIV PEP**
» Therapy may be given up to 72 hours after exposure.
» In children < 18 months of age: initiate antiretroviral PEP while awaiting transfer and HIV PCR results.

Children <10 years and < 30kg
- Zidovudine (AZT), oral, 12 hourly for 28 days.
  - Paediatric dose: 180–240 mg/m2. See Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.
  - Maximum: 300 mg/dose.

**AND**
- Lamivudine (3TC), oral, 4 mg/kg 12 hourly or 8mg/kg daily for 28 days.
  - Maximum: 150 mg/dose if given 12 hourly or 300 mg/dose if given daily. See Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.

**AND**
- Dolutegravir (DTG), oral, for 28 days.
  - For dosing guidance, see Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.

Dosages may vary by±1 mg/kg/dose, to allow a convenient volume of medication.
Use the adult dosage regimen if children require more than the maximum dose.
Follow-up visits should be at 2 weeks, 6 weeks, and 4 months after the rape.

Adults and children ≥ 10 years and ≥ 30 kg
Management for HIV prevention is the same as for occupational HIV exposure. See section 21.3.6.1 Post-exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

*LoE:IVb*[55]

**2. HIV PrEP (see Section 11.11: Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP))**
If patient is at ongoing high risk of HIV acquisition, commence PrEP after PEP has been completed.
Perfom HIV test 4-weeks after initiating PrEP.

**3. Hepatitis B prevention**
Management for Hepatitis B prevention is the same as for occupational hepatitis B exposure. See section 21.3.6.1 Post-exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

**4. Emergency contraception (after pregnancy is excluded)**
Do a pregnancy test in all women and female adolescents.
Children must be tested and given emergency contraception from Breast Tanner Stage III. If unsure of staging, give emergency contraception when you detect any breast development (DO NOT REGARD MENARCHE AS AN INDICATION). Refer all pregnant rape victims.

- Copper IUCD, e.g.:
- Cu T380A, inserted as soon as possible after unprotected intercourse /sexual assault and not later than 5 days.

*LoE:IIIb*[56]

**OR**

- Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg, oral, as a single dose as soon as possible after unprotected intercourse/sexual assault, and not later than 5 days.
  - If the woman vomits within 2 hours, repeat the dose.

*LoE:Ia*[57]

Advise women that their period should be on time; very rarely it is delayed but it should not be more than 7 days late. If this occurs, they should come back for a pregnancy test.

**CAUTION**
Emergency contraceptive tablets must be taken as soon as possible, preferably within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse, and not later than 5 days.
Enzyme inducers (including efavirenz and carbamazepine) cause a significant reduction in levonorgestrel concentrations.
Women on these medicines should preferably have copper IUCD inserted or alternatively double the dose of levonorgestrel.
Women > 80 kg or BMI ≥ 30 should also preferably have copper IUCD inserted or alternatively double the dose of levonorgestrel.

*LoE:IIIb*[58]

An anti-emetic:

- Metoclopramide oral, 10 mg 8 hourly as needed.

## 5. STI prophylaxis

*LoE:IIIb*[59]

Adults

- Ceftriaxone, IM, 250 mg as a single dose.
  - For ceftriaxone IM injection: Dissolve ceftriaxone 250 mg in 0.9 mL lidocaine 1% without epinephrine (adrenaline).

**AND**

- Azithromycin, oral, 1 g, as a single dose.

**AND**

- Metronidazole, oral, 2 g immediately as a single dose.

Children

Prior to hospital referral, administer:

Children < 45 kg

- Macrolide, e.g.:
- Azithromycin, oral, 20 mg/kg/dose, as a single dose, and refer.

| **Weight** kg | **Dose** mg | **Use one of the following:** | | | **Age** Months/years |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **Susp** | **Tablet** | | |
| | | 200 mg/5mL | 250 mg | 500 mg | |
| >7–9 kg | 160 mg | 4 mL | | | >6-12 months |
| >9–11 kg | 200 mg | 5 mL | – | – | >12–18 months |
| >11–14 kg | 240 mg | 6 mL | – | – | >18 months–3 years |
| >14–18 kg | 320 mg | 8 mL | – | – | >3–5 years |
| >18-25 | 400 mg | 10 mL | – | – | >5-7 years |
| >25–35 kg | 500 mg | – | 2 tablets | 1 tablet | >7–11 years |
| >35–45 kg | 750mg | – | 3 tablets | – | >11–13 years |
| > 45 kg | 1000 mg | – | – | 2 tablets | >13 years |

Children ≥ 45 kg

- Macrolide, e.g.:
- Azithromycin, oral, 1g, as a single dose, and refer.

**AND**

- Metronidazole, oral, as a single dose, and refer.
  - 1–3 years: 500 mg
  - 3–7 years: 600–800 mg
  - 7–10 years 1 g
  - > 10 years 2 g

**AND**

- Ceftriaxone, IM, 80 mg/kg/dose immediately as a single dose. See dosing table, pg 23.3.
  - Do not inject more than 1 g at one injection site.

**CAUTION: USE OF CEFTRIAXONE IN NEONATES AND CHILDREN**

» If *SUSPECTING SERIOUS BACTERIAL INFECTION* in neonate, give ceftriaxone, even if jaundiced.

» Avoid giving calcium-containing IV fluids (e.g. Ringer Lactate) together with ceftriaxone:
- If ≤ 28 days old, avoid calcium-containing IV fluids for 48 hours after ceftriaxone administered.
- If > 28 days old, ceftriaxone and calcium-containing IV fluids may be given sequentially provided the giving set is flushed thoroughly with sodium chloride 0.9% before and after.

- Preferably administer IV fluids without calcium contents.

» Always include the dose and route of administration of ceftriaxone in the referral letter.

*LoE:IIIb*[60]

### REFERRAL

» All patients with severe physical or psychological injuries.
- All children for medico legal and general care assessment after initiation of PEP as outlined above at PHC.
- If uncertain, phone Childline 0800055555
- Pregnant rape victims.
- Adults with:
  - » Active bleeding
  - » Abdominal pain
  - » Multiple injuries
  - » History of the use of a foreign object

**Note:** Refer if there are inadequate resources with regards to:
- counselling
- laboratory for testing
- medico-legal examination
- medicine treatment

## 21.3.6.3 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, INADVERTENT (NON-OCCUPATIONAL)

Z29.8 + Z20.5 + Z20.2 + Z20.6

### DESCRIPTION

Inadvertent (non-occupational) exposure to infectious material from HIV and hepatitis B sero-positive persons often requires clinical judgement and includes:
» human bites (requires hepatitis B, but not HIV prophylaxis)
» sharing of needles during recreational drug use
» consensual sexual exposure, burst condoms
» contact sports with blood exposure

Management of inadvertent (non-occupational) HIV and hepatitis B exposure is the same as for occupational exposure. See Section: 21.3.6.1 Post exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

*LoE:IIIa*[61]

For exposures of a sexual nature (e.g. consensual sex with a burst condom), consider emergency contraception and STI prophylaxis on a case-by-case basis – see Section 21.3.6.2: Post exposure prophylaxis, rape and sexual assault.

## 21.3.7 SOFT TISSUE INJURIES

T14.0-1/T14.9

### DESCRIPTION

Injuries may be minor, moderate or major:

**Major injuries:** it is important to recognise potentially life-threatening injuries. Indicators of such injuries are:
» Mechanism of injury: motor vehicle collision at speed exceeding 60 km/hour, ejection from the car, death of other occupant in the same car compartment, roll-over, pedestrian thrown out of his/her shoes, fall from height of more than 2 stories (more than thrice the patient's height in a child), multiple gunshot wounds.

- Physiological status: unable to maintain airway, tachycardia, hypoxia, hypotension on arrival (even if corrected with crystalloid infusion), tachycardia (especially in a child) or decreased level of consciousness.
- Anatomical distribution: (suspicion of) injuries to more than one body region (face, intracranial, chest, abdominal cavity, spine).
- Age: children < 2 years of age require admission.

**Moderate injuries** (list is not exhaustive):
- Head injuries: moderate head injuries (i.e. any GCS 11-14), facial fractures (airway maintained).
- Neck injuries: stable patient with a stabbed neck, tenderness over C-spine.
- Chest injuries: pneumothorax, haemothorax, rib fractures (2 or less).
- Abdominal injuries: any suspicion of an intra-abdominal injury in a haemodynamically stable patient: e.g. abdominal bruising (including seat belt sign in children), tenderness, distension, loss of bowel sounds, vomiting, haematemesis or haematuria.
- Extremity injuries: major open wounds, degloving injuries (boggy feel under intact skin), fractures, dislocations (in children: point tenderness around a major joint), crush injuries, multiple soft tissue injuries, enlarging or pulsating swelling.
- Suspicion of abuse (child abuse, intimate partner abuse, elderly abuse).

**Minor injuries** are injuries that can be managed as an outpatient and include bruises, small lacerations, sprains, concussions etc.
- Human bites (see Section 21.3.1.2: Human bites) and animal bites (see Section 21.3.1.1: Animal bites).
- Sprains or strains (see Section 21.3.8: Sprains and strains).
- Exclude fractures.

## EMERGENCY MANAGEMENT

All trauma patients, except for those who only have minor injuries, should undergo these surveys:

**A =** **Airway:** check and maintain airway. If airway obstructed, first perform a jaw thrust manoeuver, then if able, insert an endotracheal tube. Patients with maxillofacial fractures may require a tracheostomy.

**B =** **Breathing:** assess respiratory rate, use of accessory muscles, symmetry, oxygen saturation. If needed, support breathing using a Bag-Valve-Mask device ('AMBU bag'). Look for signs of pneumothorax (affected site is hyperinflated, hypertympanic and has decreased breath sounds). If tension pneumothorax (distended neck veins, deviated trachea, hypoxia and hypotension): perform a needle thoracostomy.

**C =** **Circulation:** look for tachycardia and hypotension. Put up two large bore peripheral lines, a femoral line or an intraosseous line in the tibia (if no abdominal injury) or the proximal humerus. In adults: if SBP if < 90 mmHg, infuse 2 L of sodium chloride 0.9% until SBP ≥ 90 mmHg. If actively bleeding, it is permissible to maintain SBP≥ 80 mmHg (or a palpable radial pulse if you do not have access to a BP machine). In children the SBP should not fall below (70 + [2 x age]) mmHg.

**D =** **Disability:** perform a brief neurologic assessment and classify according to the Glasgow Coma Scale:

| Glasgow Coma Scale: Add scores to give a single score out of 15: | | |
|---|---|---|
| Best motor response: | Obeys commands | 6 |
| | Localises to pain | 5 |
| | Withdraws from pain | 4 |
| | Abnormal flexion to pain | 3 |
| | Extends to pain | 2 |
| | None | 1 |
| Best verbal response: | Orientated | 5 |
| | Confused | 4 |
| | Inappropriate words | 3 |
| | Incomprehensible sounds | 2 |
| | None | 1 |
| Eye opening | Spontaneous | 4 |
| | To voice | 3 |
| | To pain | 2 |
| | None | 1 |
| Total | | |

Table 21.16: Primary survey of trauma patients

**E =** **Exposure/environment:** expose the patient. If any suspicion of spinal cord injury (multi-trauma, decreased level of consciousness, neurological deficit, tenderness over the spine, severe mechanism of injury, anatomic deformity of the spine or any of the following: intoxication, inability to communicate or a distracting injury) cut the patient's clothes off, so as to minimise movement of the spine, and immobilise neck using a long back board. Use a hard collar and strapping to the trolley in other patients Prevent hypothermia by covering the patient with warm blankets, and infusing warm fluids.

When major physiological derangements are identified and patient is stabilised using the ABCDEs of the primary survey, perform an AMPLE history and secondary survey:

**AMPLE** history:

**A =** allergies
**M =** the patient's regular medication (including contraceptives and OTC medication)
**P =** past medical history
**L =** time of last meal (important is the time between the last meal and the accident)
**E =** events leading up to the incident

### Secondary survey

The secondary survey is a head-to-toe examination of the patient to identify any injuries that may have been missed during the primary survey. The secondary survey is only performed in a stable patient.

First examine patient from the front, then log-roll the patient and examine the back (include a rectal examination).

All fracture sites must be immobilised by external splints.

Any additional investigations should be ordered according to availability of resources:

» Bloods may include FBC, clotting profile, cross-match and U & Es.
» Consider whether the patient requires transfer for x-rays.

## MANAGEMENT OF WOUNDS AND LACERATIONS

» Assess wound: if significant devitalised tissue, especially if due to a crush injury or a bite, dress with povidone-iodine and refer for surgical debridement.
» Assess surrounding tissues and test function: look for associated fractures, ligament/tendon damage and nerve or vascular injuries. Document.

» If needed, anaesthetise wound. Remove foreign bodies and irrigate the wound with sodium chloride 0.9%. If needed, remove any devitalised tissue with a scalpel.
» Wounds may be glued with tissue adhesives if wound < 4 cm, clean and uncomplicated, especially in children and elderly patients. Avoid in the following cases: lacerations in areas under tension (hands, feet, joints), oral mucosa, wounds in moist or hairy areas (axillae/perineum), if needing high level of precision (hairline or vermilion border of lip), or wounds at increased risk of infection (bite wounds, puncture wounds, wounds with contaminated tissue). Wounds on the scalp can be glued but surrounding hair needs to be trimmed.

**Tissue adhesive (glue):**
- Clean wound thoroughly with chlorhexidine 0.05% aqueous solution.
- Ensure good haemostasis before applying glue.
- Appose wound edges (bring wound edges together). Ensure patient is positioned appropriately so that when applied, any excess glue does not run down into areas not meant to be glued. If this happens, quickly wipe away with dry gauze.
- Crush tissues adhesive vial and invert.
- Gently brush adhesive over laceration (avoid contact with gloves/ instruments and avoid pushing adhesive into wound).
- Apply three layers of adhesive (maximum bonding strength is achieved within 2.5 minutes of application).
- Do not put on any covering or dressings.
- Advise patients that they may shower but not soak in bath and to pat area dry.
- The bonded adhesives spontaneously slough off within 5 to 10 days.

## MEDICINE TREATMENT

If fluid replacement needed, see Section 21.2.9: Shock.

Adults
- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 1L as a rapid bolus.
  - Repeat bolus until blood pressure is improved.

Children
- Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 20 mL/kg as a rapid bolus.
  - Repeat bolus if no adequate response.

**Note:** If patient develops respiratory distress, discontinue fluids.

**Tetanus prophylaxis:**
Z23.5
If not previously immunised within the last 5 years
- Tetanus toxoid (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

**If sutures needed:**
- Lidocaine without adrenaline (epinephrine), injection. *LoE:IVb*[62]
  - Infiltrate around the wound as local anaesthetic.
  - Maximum dose: 3 mg/kg.
  - See dosing table below.

| Weight<br>kg | Maximum<br>dose, mg | Vial<br>1%, 10 mg/mL | Vial<br>2%, 20 mg/mL | Age<br>months/years |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| >2.5–3.5 kg | 7 mg | 0.7 mL | 0.35 mL | Birth–1 month |
| >3.5–5 kg | 10 mg | 1 mL | 0.5 mL | >1–3 months |
| >5–7 kg | 15 mg | 1.5 mL | 0.75 mL | >3–6 months |
| >7–9 kg | 20 mg | 2 mL | 1 mL | >6–12 months |
| >9–11 kg | 25 mg | 2.5 mL | 1.25 mL | >12–18 months |
| >11–14 kg | 30 mg | 3 mL | 1.5 mL | >18 months–3 years |
| >14–17.5 kg | 40 mg | 4 mL | 2 mL | >3–5 years |
| >17.5–35 kg | 50 mg | 5 mL | 2.5 mL | >5–11 years |
| >35–55 kg | 100 mg | 10 mL | 5 mL | >11–15 years |

For children > 55 kg and adults:

- Lidocaine without adrenaline (epinephrine), injection.
  - Infiltrate around the wound as local anaesthetic.
  - Maximum dose: 3 mg/kg.

**Pain:**

Children

- Paracetamol, oral, 10–15 mg/kg/dose 6 hourly when required. See dosing table, pg 23.8.

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours).
  - Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

For more severe pain, give analgesia as appropriate. See Section 20.1: Pain control.

**Infected wound management:**

Manage as for cellulitis. See Section 5.4.3: Cellulitis.

## REFERRAL

**Urgent**

» All major and moderate injuries once stabilised.
» Infected wounds.

**Note:**

» If uncertain how to stabilise patient, phone for guidance from referral hospital.
» Before transport leaves, ensure endotracheal tube is securely strapped, all lines are secured, all drips are running well and patient is well covered to prevent hypothermia.
» If transport is delayed, ensure patient does not deteriorate while waiting: repeat ABCD survey at least hourly.

## 21.3.8 SPRAINS AND STRAINS

S03.4-5/S13.4-6/S23.3-5/S33.5-7/S43.4-7/S53.4/S63.5-7/S73.1/S83.4-6/S93.4-6/T11.2/T13.2/ T14.3

### DESCRIPTION

Clinical features include:

» pain, especially on movement
» tenderness on touch
» limited movement
» history of trauma

May be caused by:

» sport injuries
» slips and twists
» overuse of muscles
» abnormal posture

**Note:** In children always bear non-accidental injuries (assault) in mind.

### EMERGENCY TREATMENT

Immobilise with firm bandage and/or temporary splinting.

Children

- Paracetamol, oral, 10–15 mg/kg/dose 6 hourly when required. See dosing table, pg 23.8.

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours).
  - Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

**AND**

Children >12 years of age and adults

- NSAID, e.g.:
- Ibuprofen, oral, 200–400 mg 8 hourly with or after a meal.

### REFERRAL

» Severe progressive pain.
» Progressive swelling.
» Extensive bruising.
» Deformity.
» Joint tenderness on bone.
» No response to treatment.
» Severe limitation of movement.
» Suspected serious injury.
» Recurrence.
» Previous history of bleeding disorder.
» Consider rehabilitation services for sprains, strains, and overuse injuries to improve joint stability and assist with pain management.

**References:**


[1] Cardiac pulmonary arrest – COVID-19 considerations: Resuscitation Council of South Africa. Advanced Cardiac Arrest Algorithm for Suspected Communicable Disease (Respiratory), 2021. https://resus.co.za/

Cardiac pulmonary arrest – COVID-19 considerations: Atkins DL, Sasson C, Hsu A, Aziz K, Becker LB, Berg RA, et al.; Emergency Cardiovascular Care Committee and Get With the Guidelines-Resuscitation, Adult and Pediatric Task Forces of the American Heart Association in Collaboration With the American Academy of Pediatrics, American Association for Respiratory Care, American Society of Anesthesiologists, and the Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists. 2022 Interim Guidance to Health Care Providers for Basic and Advanced Cardiac Life Support in Adults, Children, and Neonates With Suspected or Confirmed COVID-19: From the Emergency Cardiovascular Care Committee and Get With The Guidelines-Resuscitation Adult and Pediatric Task Forces of the American Heart Association in Collaboration With the American Academy of Pediatrics, American Association for Respiratory Care, the Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists, and American Society of Anesthesiologists. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes. 2022 Apr;15(4):e008900. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/35072519/

[2] Cardiac pulmonary arrest – COVID-19 considerations & PPE: Brown A, Schwarcz L, Counts CR, Barnard LM, Yang BY, Emert JM, et al. Risk for Acquiring Coronavirus Disease Illness among Emergency Medical Service Personnel Exposed to Aerosol-Generating Procedures. Emerg Infect Dis. 2021 Sep;27(9):2340-2348. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34197282/

[3] Lewis SR, Pritchard MW, Evans DJ, Butler AR, Alderson P, Smith AF, Roberts I. Colloids versus crystalloids for fluid resuscitation in critically ill people. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2018 Aug 3;8(8):CD000567. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23450531

Sodium chloride, 0.9%: Bunn F, Trivedi D. Colloid solutions for fluid resuscitation. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2012 Jul 11;7:CD001319. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22786474

Sodium chloride, 0.9%: Mutter TC, Ruth CA, Dart AB. Hydroxyethyl starch (HES) versus other fluid therapies: effects on kidney function. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013 Jul 23;7:CD007594. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23881659

Sodium Chloride, 0.9%: National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Medicine review - Hydroxyethyl Starch (HES) Solutions for acute hypovolaemia due to blood loss (trauma, intraoperative haemorrhage), 6 October 2015. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Sodium chloride 0.9%: National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-Adult Hospital level. Medicine Review: Ringer Lactate for resuscitation in adults, updated review, August 2019. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[4] Adrenaline/epinephrine, IO (Bradycardia-children): Resuscitation Council of South Africa. Advanced Cardiac Arrest Algorithm, Adult and Paediatric, 2021. https://resus.co.za/

[5] Asystole >20 minutes (termination of resuscitation): 2020 American Heart Association. 2020 American Heart Association Guidelines for CPR and ECC https://cpr.heart.org/en/resuscitation-science/cpr-and-ecc-guidelines

Asystole >20 minutes (termination of resuscitation): Ebell MH, Vellinga A, Masterson S, Yun P. Meta-analysis of the accuracy of termination of resuscitation rules for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. Emerg Med J. 2019 Aug;36(8):479-484. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31142552/

Asystole >20 minutes (termination of resuscitation): Lin YY, Lai YY, Chang HC, Lu CH, Chiu PW, Kuo YS, Huang SP, et al. Predictive performances of ALS and BLS termination of resuscitation rules in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest for different resuscitation protocols. BMC Emerg Med. 2022 Mar 27;22(1):53. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/35346055/

[6] Estimating paediatric body weight with paediatric resuscitation tape – PAWPER tape: Manyoni MJ, Goldstein LN, Wells M. A comparison of four weight estimation systems for paediatric resuscitation. S Afr J Surg. 2019 Jun;57(2):40-46. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31342683/

Estimating paediatric body weight with paediatric resuscitation tape – PAWPER tape: Wells M. A validation of the PAWPER XL-MAC tape for total body weight estimation in preschool children from low- and middle-income countries. PLoS One. 2019 Jan 7;14(1):e0210332. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30615693/

Estimating paediatric body weight with paediatric resuscitation tape – Broselow tape: Wells M, Goldstein LN, Bentley A, Basnett S, Monteith I. The accuracy of the Broselow tape as a weight estimation tool and a drug-dosing guide - A systematic review and meta-analysis. Resuscitation. 2017 Dec;121:9-33. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28958796/

Estimating paediatric body weight (formula): Advanced Life Support Group (ALSG). Advanced Paediatric Life Support: A Practical Approach to Emergencies, 6th Edition. Chichester (West Sussex, UK): BMJ Books; 2016.

[7] Adrenaline/epinephrine, IV (Bradycardia-children): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[8] Adrenaline/epinephrine, IV (Bradycardia-children): Resuscitation Council of South Africa. Advanced Cardiac Arrest Algorithm, Adult and Paediatric, 2021. https://resus.co.za/

Atropine, IV (Bradycardia-children): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[9] Olanzapine, oral/oral dispersible tablet/IM/: National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-Adult Hospital level. Medicine Review: Olanzapine for delirium, 9 August 2022. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Olanzapine, oral /oral dispersible tablet/IM: Taylor, David; Paton, Carol; Kapur, Shitij. The Maudsley Prescribing Guidelines, Thirteenth Edition. West Sussex: John Wiley & Sons Ltd; 2019

Benzodiazepines/ Haloperidol (dosing in the elderly): South African Medicines Formulary. 14th Edition. Division of Clinical Pharmacology. University of Cape Town, 2022.

NICE CG103: Delirium: prevention, diagnosis and management in hospital and long-term care https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg103

[10] Thiamine (alcohol withdrawal/ Wernicke's encephalopathy): Ambrose ML, Bowden SC, Whelan G. Thiamin treatment and working memory function of alcohol-dependent people: preliminary findings. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2001 Jan;25(1):112-6. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11198705/

Thiamine (alcohol withdrawal/ Wernicke's encephalopathy): Day E, Bentham PW, Callaghan R, Kuruvilla T, George S. Thiamine for prevention and treatment of Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome in people who abuse alcohol. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013 Jul 1;2013(7):CD004033. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23818100

Thiamine (alcohol withdrawal/ Wernicke's encephalopathy): Thomson AD, Cook CC, Touquet R, Henry JA; Royal College of Physicians, London. The Royal College of Physicians report on alcohol: guidelines for managing Wernicke's encephalopathy in the

accident and Emergency Department. Alcohol Alcohol. 2002 Nov-Dec;37(6):513-21. Erratum in: Alcohol Alcohol. 2003 May-Jun;38(3):291. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12414541/

[11] Dextrose 10%, IV: Moore C, Woollard M. Dextrose 10% or 50% in the treatment of hypoglycaemia out of hospital? A randomised controlled trial. Emerg Med J. 2005 Jul;22(7):512-5. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15983093

[12] Thiamine (alcoholics/malnourished): Ambrose ML, Bowden SC, Whelan G. Thiamin treatment and working memory function of alcohol-dependent people: preliminary findings. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2001 Jan;25(1):112-6. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11198705/

Thiamine (alcoholics/malnourished): Day E, Bentham PW, Callaghan R, Kuruvilla T, George S. Thiamine for prevention and treatment of Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome in people who abuse alcohol. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013 Jul 1;2013(7):CD004033. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23818100

Thiamine (alcoholics/malnourished): Thomson AD, Cook CC, Touquet R, Henry JA; Royal College of Physicians, London. The Royal College of Physicians report on alcohol: guidelines for managing Wernicke's encephalopathy in the accident and Emergency Department. Alcohol Alcohol. 2002 Nov-Dec;37(6):513-21. Erratum in: Alcohol Alcohol. 2003 May-Jun;38(3):291. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12414541/

[13] Thiamine (IV administration): Joint Formulary Committee. British National Formulary. London: BMJ Group and Pharmaceutical Press; 2020.

[14] Morphine, parenteral (Caution): National Department of Health. Affordable Medicines, EDP-Adult Hospital level. Medicine Review: Morphine for the treatment of acute pulmonary distress, May 2022. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list.

Hendrikse C, Ngah V, Kallon II, Thom G, Leong TD, Cohen K, McCaul M. Signal of harm in morphine use in adults with acute pulmonary oedema: A rapid systematic review. S Afr Med J. 2023 Aug 3;113(8):39-43. doi: 10.7196/SAMJ.2023.v113i8.348. PMID: 37882120.

[15] Oxygen (AMI/STEMI): National Department of Health. Affordable Medicines, EDP-Adult Hospital level. Medicine Review: Oxygen cut-off for acutely ill medical inpatients, 9 September 2021. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Oxygen (AMI/STEMI): Chu DK, Kim LH, Young PJ, Zamiri N, Almenawer SA, Jaeschke R, Szczeklik W, Schünemann HJ, Neary JD, Alhazzani W. Mortality and morbidity in acutely ill adults treated with liberal versus conservative oxygen therapy (IOTA): a systematic review and meta-analysis. Lancet. 2018 Apr 28;391(10131):1693-1705. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29726345

[16] Oxygen (anaphylaxis): Resuscitation Council of Southern Africa: Emergency management of anaphylaxis algorithm, 2021. http://resus.co.za/

[17] Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV: Resuscitation Council of Southern Africa: Emergency management of anaphylaxis algorithm, 2021. http://resus.co.za/

[18] Salbutamol nebulisation (anaphylaxis): Resuscitation Council of Southern Africa: Emergency management of anaphylaxis algorithm, 2021. http://resus.co.za/

[19] Ipratropium nebulisation (anaphylaxis): Resuscitation Council of Southern Africa: Emergency management of anaphylaxis algorithm, 2021. http://resus.co.za/

[20] Hydrocortixone, IV/slow IM: National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. http://www.health.gov.za/

[21] Hydrocortisone, IV/slow IM: National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. http://www.health.gov.za/

[22] Promethazine IM/IM: National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. http://www.health.gov.za/

[23] MIdazolam, buccal (children-status epilepticus): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC level. Medicine review: Midazolam, buccal vs diazepam, rectal for the control of seizures in children, 28 May 2014. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

MIdazolam, buccal (children-status epilepticus): McMullan J, Sasson C, Pancioli A, Silbergleit R. Midazolam versus diazepam for the treatment of status epilepticus in children and young adults: a meta-analysis. Acad Emerg Med. 2010 Jun;17(6):575-82. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20624136

Midazolam, buccal (children-status epilepticus): McIntyre J, Robertson S, Norris E, Appleton R, Whitehouse WP, Phillips B, Martland T, Berry K, Collier J, Smith S, Choonara I. Safety and efficacy of buccal midazolam versus rectal diazepam for emergency treatment of seizures in children: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet. 2005 Jul 16-22;366(9481):205-10. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16023510

Midazolam, buccal (children-status epilepticus): Mpimbaza A, Ndeezi G, Staedke S, Rosenthal PJ, Byarugaba J. Comparison of buccal midazolam with rectal diazepam in the treatment of prolonged seizures in Ugandan children: a randomized clinical trial. Pediatrics. 2008; 121:e58–64. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18166545

Midazolam, buccal (children-status epilepticus): Scott RC, Besag FM, Neville BG. Buccal midazolam and rectal diazepam for treatment of prolonged seizures in childhood and adolescence: a randomised trial. Lancet.1999; 353:623–6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10030327

MIdazolam, buccal (children-second dose): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC level. Medicine review: Buccal midazolam (repeat dose) for status epilepticus in children - review update, 25 May 2017. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

MIdazolam, buccal (children-second dose): Smith R, Brown J. Midazolam for status epilepticus. Aust Prescr. 2017 Feb;40(1):23-25. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28246432

Midazolam, buccal (children-second dose): World Health Organisation. mhGAP Intervention Guide Mental Health Gap Action Programme for mental, neurological and substance use disorders in non-specialized health settings, version 2.0 Geneva: World Health Organization; 2016. http://www.who.int/mental_health/mhgap/mhGAP_intervention_guide_02/en/

Midazolam, buccal (children-second dose): National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. Epilepsies: diagnosis and management Clinical guideline [CG137], 2012. https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg137

[24] MIdazolam, IM (children-status epilepticus): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC level. Medicine review: Midazolam, IM vs other benzodiazepines (any route of administration), 31 August 2017. http://health.gov.za/

MIdazolam, IM (children-status epilepticus): Jain P, Sharma S, Dua T, Barbui C, Das RR, Aneja S. Efficacy and safety of anti-epileptic drugs in patients with active convulsive seizures when no IV access is available: Systematic review and meta-analysis. Epilepsy research. 2016;122:47-55. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26922313

Midazolam, IM (children-status epilepticus): Momen AA, Azizi Malamiri R, Nikkhah A, Jafari M, Fayezi A, Riahi K, et al. Efficacy and safety of intramuscular midazolam versus rectal diazepam in controlling status epilepticus in children. European journal of paediatric neurology : EJPN : official journal of the European Paediatric Neurology Society. 2015;19(2):149-54. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18166545

[25] Phenobarbital, oral via naso-gastric tube (children-status epilepticus): Wilmshurst JM, van der Walt JS, Ackermann S, Karlsson MO, Blockman M. Rescue therapy with high-dose oral phenobarbitone loading for refractory status epilepticus. J Paediatr Child Health. 2010 Jan;46(1-2):17-22. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19943867

[26] Midazolam, IM (adults-status epilepticus):Silbergleit R, Durkalski V,Lowenstein D,Conwit R,Pancioli A,Palesch Y,Barsan W; NETT Investigators. Intramuscular versus intravenous therapy for prehospital status epilepticus. NEnglJMed. 2012Feb16; 366(7):591-600. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22335736

[27] Diazepam, IV (adults-status epilepticus): Brophy GM, Bell R, Claassen J, Alldredge B, BleckTP, Glauser T, Laroche SM, RivielloJJ Jr, Shutter L, Sperling MR, Treiman DM, Vespa PM; Neurocritical Care Society Status Epilepticus Guideline Writing Committee. Guidelines for the evaluation and management of status epilepticus. Neurocrit Care. 2012 Aug;17(1):3-23. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22528274

Diazepam, IV - Adults status epilepticus: South African Medicines Formulary. 14th Edition. Division of Clinical Pharmacology. University of Cape Town, 2022.

[28] Wound washing (rabid animal bite): World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

[29] Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): Sirikwin S, Likanonsakul S, Waradejwinyoo S, Pattamadilok S, Kumperasart S, Chaovavanich A, et al.. Antibody response to an eight-site intradermal rabies vaccination in patients infected with HumanImmunodeficiency Virus. Vaccine. 2009 Jul 9;27(32):4350-4. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19487057/

Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): Thisyakorn U, Pancharoen C, Wilde H. Immunologic and virologic evaluation of HIV-1-infected children after rabies vaccination. Vaccine. 2001 Jan 8;19(11-12):1534-7. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11163679/

Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): Sampath G, Parikh S, Sangram P, Briggs DJ. Rabies post-exposure prophylaxis in malnourished children exposed to suspect rabid animals. Vaccine. 2005 Jan 19;23(9):1102-5. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15629352/

Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): Rahimi P, Vahabpour R, Aghasadeghi MR, Sadat SM, Howaizi N, Mostafavi E, et al. Neutralizing Antibody Response after Intramuscular Purified Vero Cell Rabies Vaccination (PVRV) in Iranian Patients with Specific Medical Conditions. PLoS One. 2015 Oct 6;10(10):e0139171. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0139171. eCollection 2015. Erratum in: PLoS One. 2015;10(10):e0142244. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26440665/

Immunocomprised individuals (dosing of rabies vaccine): Simani OE, Izu A, Violari A, Cotton MF, van Niekerk N, Adrian PV, Madhi SA. Effect of HIV-1 exposure and antiretroviral treatment strategies in HIV-infected children on immunogenicity of vaccines during infancy. AIDS. 2014 Feb 20;28(4):531-41. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24468996/

[30] HRIG and ERIG (directions of administration): Madhusudana SN, Ashwin BY, Sudarshan S. Feasibility of reducing rabies immunoglobulin dosage for passive immunization against rabies: results of In vitro and In vivo studies. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2013 Sep;9(9):1914-7. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23792347/

HRIG and ERIG (directions of administration): Bharti OK, Madhusudana SN, Wilde H.. Injecting rabies immunoglobulin (RIG) into wounds only: A significant saving of lives and costly RIG. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2017; 13(4):762–765. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28277089/

HRIG and ERIG (directions of administration): Bharti OK, Madhusudana SN, Gaunta PL, Belludi AY. Local infiltration of rabies immunoglobulins without systemic intramuscular administration: An alternative cost-effective approach for passive immunization against rabies. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2016; 12(3):837–842. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26317441/

HRIG and ERIG (directions of administration): World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

[31] HRIG and ERIG (summary of regimen): National Institute of Communicable Diseases. Updated: human rabies prophylaxis guideline, draft. https://www.nicd.ac.za/

[32] Rabies vaccine dosing: World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

Rabies vaccine dosing: Sirikwin S, Likanonsakul S, Waradejwinyoo S, Pattamadilok S, Kumperasart S, Chaovavanich A, et al.. Antibody response to an eight-site intradermal rabies vaccination in patients infected with HumanImmunodeficiency Virus. Vaccine. 2009 Jul 9;27(32):4350-4. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/19487057/

Rabies vaccine dosing: Thisyakorn U, Pancharoen C, Wilde H. Immunologic and virologic evaluation of HIV-1-infected children after rabies vaccination. Vaccine. 2001 Jan 8;19(11-12):1534-7. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11163679/

Rabies vaccine dosing: Sampath G, Parikh S, Sangram P, Briggs DJ. Rabies post-exposure prophylaxis in malnourished children exposed to suspect rabid animals. Vaccine. 2005 Jan 19;23(9):1102-5. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/15629352/

Rabies vaccine dosing: Rahimi P, Vahabpour R, Aghasadeghi MR, Sadat SM, Howaizi N, Mostafavi E, et al. Neutralizing Antibody Response after Intramuscular Purified Vero Cell Rabies Vaccination (PVRV) in Iranian Patients with Specific Medical Conditions. PLoS One. 2015 Oct 6;10(10):e0139171. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0139171. eCollection 2015. Erratum in: PLoS One. 2015;10(10):e0142244. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26440665/

Rabies vaccine dosing: Simani OE, Izu A, Violari A, Cotton MF, van Niekerk N, Adrian PV, Madhi SA. Effect of HIV-1 exposure and antiretroviral treatment strategies in HIV-infected children on immunogenicity of vaccines during infancy. AIDS. 2014 Feb 20;28(4):531-41. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24468996/

[33] Tetanus vaccination (human bites): Muguti GI, Dixon MS. Tetanus following human bite. Br J Plast Surg. 1992 Nov-Dec;45(8):614-5. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1493537

Tetanus vaccination (human bites): Patil PD, Panchabhai TS, Galwankar SC. Managing human bites. J Emerg Trauma Shock. 2009 Sep;2(3):186-90. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20009309

[34] HIV PEP (human bites): Cresswell FV, Ellis J, Hartley J, Sabin CA, Orkin C, Churchill DR. A systematic review of risk of HIV transmission through biting or spitting: implications for policy. HIV Med. 2018 Apr 23. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29687590

[35] Tetatnus toxoid vaccine (scorpion stings and spider bites): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[36] Local anaesthetic ophthamlmic drops (therapeutic group): Lawrenson JG, Edgar DF, Tanna GK, Gudgeon AC. Comparison of the tolerability and efficacy of unit-dose, preservative-free topical ocular anaesthetics. Ophthalmic Physiol Opt. 1998 Sep;18(5):393-400. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/10023471/

[37] NSAID caution: World Health Organisation: Guidelines for the prevention and clinical management of snakebite in Africa. https://www.who.int/health-topics/snakebite#tab=overview

[38] Snake polyvalent antivenom (indications): South African Medicines Formulary. 14th Edition. Division of Clinical Pharmacology. University of Cape Town, 2022.

[39] Snake antivenom criteria: Wood D, Sartorius B and Hift R. Snakebite in north-eastern South Africa: clinical characteristics and risks for severity. S Afr Fam Pract 2016; 58(2):62–67. https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/pdf/10.1080/20786190.2015.1120934

[40] Povidone iodine 5% cream (septic burns): Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC Review: Burns dressings scoping review, October 2021. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[41] Activated charcoal (single dose): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-Adult Hospital level. Medicine Review: Single dose activated charcoal for poisonings, May 2019. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Activated charcoal (single dose): Chyka PA, Seger D; American Academy of Clinical Toxicology; European Association of Poisons Centres and Clinical Toxicologists. Position statement: single-dose activated charcoal. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 1997;35(7):721-41. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15822758

Activated charcoal (single dose): Rosenberg J, Benowitz NL, Pond S. Pharmacokinetics of drug overdose. Clin Pharmacokinet 1981; 6:161– 192. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7016383

Activated charcoal (single dose): Yeates PJA, Thomas SHL. Effectiveness of delayed activated charcoal administration in simulated paracetamol (acetaminophen) overdose. Br J Clin Pharmacol 2000; 49:11–14. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7016383

Activated charcoal (single dose): Laine K, Kivisto¨ KT, Pelttari S, Neuvonen PJ. The effect of activated charcoal on the absorption of fluoxetine, with special reference to delayed charcoal administration. Pharmacol Toxicol 1996; 79:270– 273. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8936562

Activated charcoal (single dose): Laine K, Kivisto¨ KT, Neuvonen PJ. Effect of delayed administration of activated charcoal on the absorption of conventional and slow-release verapamil. J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 1997; 35:263–268. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9140320

Activated charcoal (single dose): Laine K, Kivisto¨ KT, Ojala-Karlsson P, Neuvonen PJ. Effect of activated charcoal on the pharmacokinetics of pholcodine, with special reference to delayed charcoal ingestion. Ther Drug Monit 1997; 19:46– 50. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9029746

Activated charcoal (single dose): Green R, Grierson R, Sitar DS, Tenenbein M. How long after drug ingestion is activated charcoal still effective? J Toxicol Clin Toxicol 2001; 39:601– 605. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11762668

[42] Atropine, IV (children): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[43] Atropine, IV (bolus dose): Abedin MJ, Sayeed AA, Basher A, Maude RJ, Hoque G, Faiz MA. Open-label randomized clinical trial of atropine bolus injection versus incremental boluses plus infusion for organophosphate poisoning in Bangladesh. J Med Toxicol. 2012 Jun;8(2):108-17. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22351300

[44] Naloxone, IV/IM (children): Kleinman ME, Chameides L, Schexnayder SM, Samson RA, Hazinski MF, Atkins DL, Berg MD, de Caen AR, Fink EL, Freid EB, Hickey RW, Marino BS, Nadkarni VM, Proctor LT, Qureshi FA, Sartorelli K, Topjian A, van der Jagt EW, Zaritsky AL. Part 14: pediatric advanced life support: 2010 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care.Circulation. 2010 Nov 2;122(18 Suppl 3):S876-908. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20956230

Naloxone, IV/IM (children): Sivilotti ML. Flumazenil, naloxone and the 'coma cocktail'. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2016 Mar;81(3):428-36. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26469689/

[45] Naloxone, IV/IM (adults): Sivilotti ML. Flumazenil, naloxone and the 'coma cocktail'. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2016 Mar;81(3):428-36. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26469689/

[46] N-acetylcysteine, oral (dosing for paracetamol poisoning): Yarema MC, Johnson DW, Berlin RJ, Sivilotti ML, Nettel-Aguirre A, Brant RF, et al. Comparison of the 20-hour intravenous and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine protocols for the treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. Ann Emerg Med. 2009 Oct;54(4):606-14. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19556028

N-acetylcysteine, oral (dosing for paracetamol poisoning): Williamson K, Wahl MS, Mycyk MB. Direct comparison of 20-hour IV, 36-hour oral, and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine for treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. Am J Ther. 2013 Jan;20(1):37-40. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23299230

N-acetylcysteine, oral (dosing for paracetamol poisoning): Rumack and Bateman. Acetaminophen and acetylcysteine dose and duration: past, present and future. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2012;50(2):91-98. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22320209

[47] Activated charcoal:Bradberry SM, Vale JA. Multiple-dose activated charcoal: a review of relevant clinical studies. J ToxicolClinToxicol. 1995;33(5):407-16. Review. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7650765

Whole bowel irrigation:Mayer AL, Sitar DS, Tenenbein M. Multiple-dose charcoal and whole-bowel irrigation do not increase clearance of absorbed salicylate. Arch Intern Med. 1992 Feb;152(2):393-6. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1739372

[48] N-acetylcysteine, oral (adverse effects): South African Medicines Formulary. 14th Edition. Division of Clinical Pharmacology. University of Cape Town, 2022.

[49] Paracetmaol poisoning cut-off (children): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[50]Monitoring in occupational exposures: National Department of Health. National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

[51] Dolutegravir-based PEP regimen: WHO. Consolidated guidelines on HIV prevention, testing, treatment, service delivery and monitoring: recommendations for a public health approach, July 2021. https://www.who.int/publications/i/item/9789240031593

Dolutegravir-based PEP regimen: McAllister JW, Towns JM, McNulty A, Pierce AB, Foster R, Richardson R, et al. Dolutegravir with tenofovir disoproxil fumarate-emtricitabine as HIV postexposure prophylaxis in gay and bisexual men. AIDS. 2017;31(9):1291–5. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28301425

Dolutegravir-based PEP regimen National Department of Health. National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

[52] Protease-inhibitor- based PEP regimen: Ford N, Shubber Z, Calmy A, Irvine C, Rapparini C, Ajose O, et al. Choice of antiretroviral drugs for postexposure prophylaxis for adults and adolescents: A systematic review. Clinical Infectious Diseases. 2015;60 Suppl 3:S170–6. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25972499

Protease-inhibitor- based PEP regimen: National Department of Health. National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

[53] Hepatitis B immunoglobulin: (administration within 7 days): Joint Formulary Committee. British National Formulary. London: BMJ Group and Pharmaceutical Press; 2020.

[54] Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): Moorhouse M, Bekker LG, Black V, Conradie F, Harley B, Howell P, Maartens G, Papavarnavas T, Rebe K, Sorour G, Venter F, Wallis CL. Guideline on the management of occupational and non-occupational exposure to the human immunodeficiency virus and recommendations for post-exposure prophylaxis: 2015 Update. South Afr J HIV Med. 2015 Nov 10;16(1):399. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29568597

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Guidelines: Post exposure Prophylaxis to Prevent Hepatitis B Virus Infection. MMWR 2006,56(RR-16), Appendix B. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5516a3.htm?s_cid=rr5516a3_e

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC level. Medicine review: Human Hepatitis B immunoglobulin for hepatitis exposure, March 2018. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[55] PEP Dose in adults and children: Horak J, Venter WDF, Wattrus C, et al. Southern African HIV Clinicians Society 2023 Guideline for post-exposure prophylaxis: Updated recommendations. S Afr J HIV Med. 2023;24(1), a1522. https://doi.org/10.4102/sajhivmed.v24i1.1522.

[56] Copper IUD (emergency contraception): Turok DK, Jacobson JC, Dermish AI, Simonsen SE, Gurtcheff S, McFadden M, Murphy PA. Emergency contraception with a copper IUD or oral levonorgestrel: an observational study of 1-year pregnancy rates. Contraception. 2014 Mar;89(3):222-8. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24332433/

Copper IUD (emergency contraception): FSRH Guideline (April 2019) Overweight, Obesity and Contraception. BMJ Sex Reprod Health. 2019 Apr;45(Suppl 2):1-69. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31053605/

[57] Levonorgestrel 1.5 mg oral (emergency contraception): Shen J, Che Y, Showell E, Chen K, Cheng L. Interventions for emergency contraception. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2019 Jan 20;1(1):CD001324. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30661244/

[58] Levonorgesterol, oral - emergency contraception (double dose): Carten ML, Kiser JJ, Kwara A, Mawhinney S, Cu-Uvin S. Pharmacokinetic interactions between the hormonal emergency contraception, levonorgestrel (Plan B), and Efavirenz. Infect Dis Obstet Gynecol. 2012;2012:137192. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22536010

Levonorgesterol, oral - emergency contraception (double dose): Tittle V, Bull L, Boffito M, Nwokolo N. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic drug interactions between antiretrovirals and oral contraceptives. ClinPharmacokinet. 2015 Jan;54(1):23-34. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25331712

Levonorgesterol, oral - emergency contraception (double dose): Jatlaoui TC and Curtis KM. Safety and effectiveness data for emergency contraceptive pills among women with obesity: a systematic review. Contraception 94 (2016) 605–611. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27234874

[59] STI prophylaxis: Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, Johnston CM, Muzny CA, Park I, Reno H, Zenilman JM, Bolan GA. Sexually Transmitted Infections Treatment Guidelines, 2021. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2021 Jul 23;70(4):1-187. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34292926/

[60] Azithromycin, oral (STI prophylaxis for children): Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, Johnston CM, Muzny CA, Park I, Reno H, Zenilman JM, Bolan GA. Sexually Transmitted Infections Treatment Guidelines, 2021. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2021 Jul 23;70(4):1-187. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34292926/

Metronidazole, oral (STI prophylaxis for children): Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, Johnston CM, Muzny CA, Park I, Reno H, Zenilman JM, Bolan GA. Sexually Transmitted Infections Treatment Guidelines, 2021. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2021 Jul 23;70(4):1-187. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34292926/

Ceftriaxone, IM (STI prophylaxis for children): Workowski KA, Bachmann LH, Chan PA, Johnston CM, Muzny CA, Park I, Reno H, Zenilman JM, Bolan GA. Sexually Transmitted Infections Treatment Guidelines, 2021. MMWR Recomm Rep. 2021 Jul 23;70(4):1-187. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34292926/

[61] Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Adult Hospital level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): Moorhouse M, Bekker LG, Black V, Conradie F, Harley B, Howell P, Maartens G, Papavarnavas T, Rebe K, Sorour G, Venter F, Wallis CL. Guideline on the management of occupational and non-occupational exposure to the human immunodeficiency virus and recommendations for post-exposure prophylaxis: 2015 Update. South Afr J HIV Med. 2015 Nov 10;16(1):399. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29568597

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Guidelines: Post exposure Prophylaxis to Prevent Hepatitis B Virus Infection. MMWR 2006,56(RR-16), Appendix B. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/preview/mmwrhtml/rr5516a3.htm?s_cid=rr5516a3_e

Hepatitis B vaccine and hepatitis B immunoglobulin (HCW-occupational prophylaxis): National Department of Health: Affordable Medicines, EDP-PHC level. Medicine review: Human Hepatitis B immunoglobulin for hepatitis exposure, March 2018. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

[62] Lidocaine 2% injection: National Department of Health, Essential Drugs Programme. Paediatric Hospital Level STGs and EML, draft. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/content/standard-treatment-guidelines-and-essential-medicines-list

**SOUTH AFRICAN PRIMARY HEALTHCARE ESSENTIAL MEDICINES LIST**
**PHC CHAPTER 21: EMERGENCIES AND INJURIES**
**NEMLC RECOMMEDATIONS FOR MEDICINE AMENDMENTS (2020-4 REVIEW CYCLE)**

**Medicine amendment recommendations, with supporting evidence and rationale are listed below.**
**Kindly review the medicine amendments in the context of the respective standard treatment guideline (STG) and supporting medicine reviews and costing analyses.**
*Note that the associated EML chapter has been subjected to subsequent clinical editing. These editorial amendments may not be reflected in the report below.*

## A: AMENDMENTS

| SECTION | MEDICINE/ MANAGEMENT | ADDED/DELETED/AMENDED/NOT ADDED/ RETAINED |
|---|---|---|
| **21.1.1 Cardiac arrest, adults** | Cardiac arrest algorithm for suspected communicable diseases | Added |
| *- Ventricular tachycardia* | Amiodarone, IV | Not added |
| *-Cardiopulmonary resuscitation* | Guidance on fluid administration | Amended |
| *- Additional guidance – termination of resuscitation (TOR)* | Duration of asystole | Amended |
| **21.1.2 Cardiopulmonary arrest, children** | Cardiac arrest algorithm | Amended |
| | Paediatric resuscitation tape weight measurements | Added |
| | Age-based weight estimates | Added |
| | Guidance to continue resuscitation | Amended |
| **21.1.5 Management of suspected choking/foreign body aspiration in children** | Choking algorithm and related guidance | Amended |
| **21.2 Medical Emergencies** | | |
| **21.2.1 Paediatric Emergencies** | Referral for children with cerebral palsy | Not Added |
| **21.2.1.1 Rapid triage of children presenting with acute conditions in clinics and CHCS** | Triage process of all sick children | Amended |
| **21.2.4 Delirium** *-Physical restraint* | Guidance on physical restraint | Added |
| **21.2.4 Delirium** *-Medicine treatment* | Guidance amended | Amended |
| **21.2.4 Delirium** *-Acute management* | Aligned to Section 16.1.2 and 16.1.3 | Aligned |
| | Diazepam – dose frequency | Clarified |
| | Benzodiazepines – cautions amended | Amended |
| | Haloperidol, IM | Retained |
| | Olanzapine, oro-dispersible | Added |
| | Olanzapine, IM | Added |
| **21.2.4 Delirium** *- Alcoholics/ Malnourished (adults)* | Thiamine, parenteral | Dose & route of administration amended |
| **21.2.6 Hypoglycaemia and hypoglycaemic coma** | Thiamine, parenteral | Aligned |
| **21.2.8 Pulmonary oedema, acute** *- If patient very anxious or restless* | Morphine, IV | Deleted & caution added to the STG |
| **21.2.9 Shock** | Fluid replacement in children – sodium chloride 0.9%: | Dose amended |
| | Fluid replacement in children – ringers lactate | Added |
| **21.2.10 Anaphylaxis** | Guidance on anaphylaxis associated with vaccinations | Added |
| | Management – salbutamol nebulized | Dose clarified |
| | Management – ipratropium bromide nebulized | Dose clarified |
| **21.3 Trauma and Injuries** | Referral for patients with brain and spinal cord injuries | Not added |
| **21.3.1.1 Animal bites** *- Suspected rabid bite* | Wound irrigation | Amended |
| | Rabies vaccine | Directions for use amended |
| | Human rabies immunoglobulin | Directions for use amended |
| | Equine rabies immunoglobulin | Added |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid in children – 8hrly regimen | Retained |
| **21.3.1.2 Human Bites** | Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid in children – 8hrly regimen | Retained |
| **21.3.1.3 Insect stings, scorpion stings and spider bites** | Description | Editorial amendment |
| | Chlorphenamine oral | Indication amended |
| | Chlorphenamine oral | Caution deleted |
| | Paracetamol dosing guidance | Amended |
| | Contact information | Added |
| **21.3.1.4 Snakebites**<br>**-** *Venom in the eyes* | Local anaesthetic, ophthalmic drop | Added as a therapeutic class |
| | Tetracaine 0.1%, ophthalmic drops | Retained as an example of class in the STG |
| | Oxybuprocaine 4%, ophthalmic drops | Added to the TI database as an example of class |
| *- Snake antivenom* | Antivenom | Criteria for administration amended |
| | Contact information | Amended |
| **21.3.2 Burns**<br>**-** *Septic burns* | Paracetamol dosing guidance | Amended |
| | Povidone iodine, topical | Retained |
| | Silver sulfadiazine, topical | Not added |
| | Mupirocin, topical | Not added |
| | Nano-crystalline dressings | Not added |
| | Melaleuca alternifolia, topical | Not added |
| | Referral – rehabilitation services | Added |
| **21.3.3 Exposure to poisonous substances** | | |
| **-** *Tricyclic poisoning* | Sodium bicarbonate, parenteral | Not added |
| **-** *Organophosphate and carbamate poisoning* | Atropinisation | Indication amended |
| | Atropine, IV | Directions for use not amended |
| *- Opioid overdose* | Naloxone, IV | Directions for use amended |
| *- Paracetamol poisoning* | N-acetylcysteine, oral | Dose not amended |
| **-** *Toxic alcohol (ethylene glycol and methanol) poisoning* | Ethanol loading dose | Not added – cross reference to AH Chp 19.17.2 included |
| **21.3.6.1 Post exposure prophylaxis, occupational**<br>**-** *PEP for healthcare workers following hepatitis B exposure* | Hepatitis B Immunoglobulin | Amended |
| *- Delay in obtaining HBsAb results* | Time period of delay | Amended |
| **21.3.6.2 Post exposure prophylaxis, occupational** | General measures | Editorial amendment |
| | Adverse effects of PEP | Guidance amended |
| **21.3.6.2 Post exposure prophylaxis, rape and sexual assault** | HIV PEP – guidance for children | Amended |
| | HIV PrEP | Added as a cross reference to the PHC STGs and EML (PrEP section) |
| *- Emergency contraception after pregnancy is excluded* | Copper IUCD | Added (as first line option) |
| | Levonorgestrel, oral | Retained (as 2nd line option) |
| **-** *Obese women* | Levonorgestrel, oral | Dose not amended |
| **-** *STI prophylaxis for pregnant women* | Ceftriaxone, IM | Retained |
| | Azithromycin, oral | Retained |
| | Metronidazole, oral | Retained |
| | Cefixime, oral | Not added |
| | Erythromycin, oral | Not added |
| | Spectinomycin, parenteral | Not added |
| **21.3.7 Soft Tissue Injuries** | Paracetamol dosing guidance | Amended |
| | Referral of patients with haemophilia | Not added |
| **21.3.8 Sprains and strains** | Paracetamol dosing guidance | Amended |
| | Referral – rehabilitation services | Added |

## 21.1.1 CARDIAC ARREST, ADULTS

**COVID-19 considerations**

Cardiac arrest algorithm for suspected communicable diseases: *added*

Resuscitation Council of South Africa's "Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm - suspected respiratory communicable disease",[1,2] adapted with permission was included in this section – see Figure 21.2: Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm - suspected respiratory communicable disease below. The following adaptations have been made to the Resuscitation Council of South Africa's "Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm:

| | |
|---|---|
| Added | Refer to Adult and Paediatric Hospital Level STG's and EML for guidance on use of anti-arrhythmic |

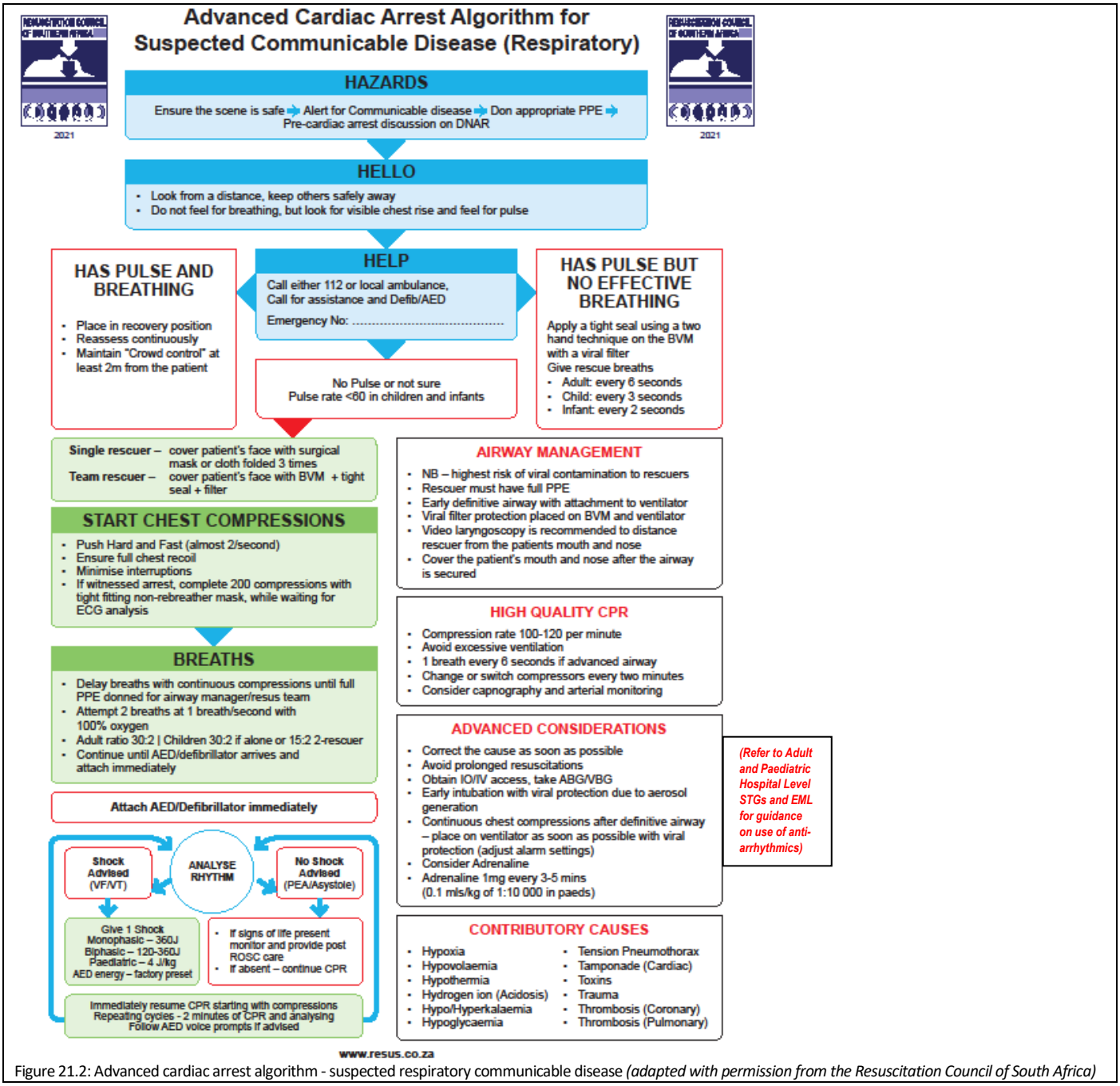



Figure 21.2: Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm - suspected respiratory communicable disease *(adapted with permission from the Resuscitation Council of South Africa)*

[1] Resuscitation Council of South Africa. Advanced Cardiac Arrest Algorithm for Suspected Communicable Disease (Respiratory), 2021. https://resus.co.za/

[2] Brown A, Schwarcz L, Counts CR, Barnard LM, Yang BY, Emert JM, et al. Risk for Acquiring Coronavirus Disease Illness among Emergency Medical Service Personnel Exposed to Aerosol-Generating Procedures. Emerg Infect Dis. 2021 Sep; 27(9): 2340-2348. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34197282/

The following text was also included in the STG, aligned with guidelines:[3]

- » The infection risk that CPR poses to providers due to aerosolization of coronavirus particles is not negligible.
- » This potential risk should be weighed against the probability of achieving spontaneous return of circulation to inform the decision to initiate or stop CPR.
- » For in hospital cardiac arrest in patients with suspected COVID-19, CPR has been shown to not be beneficial unless an immediate reversible cause is suspected, e.g., dislodgement of ET tube, etc. and is therefore not recommended.
- » For out of hospital cardiac arrest in patients with suspected COVID-19, it is recommended to not start conventional CPR in unwitnessed cardiac arrest as it will likely not be beneficial.
- » Appropriate PPE should be worn by all staff before initiating CPR: FFP3 mask, visor, gloves and gown.

Guidance regarding PPE was based on a retrospective cohort study[4] that showed that overall, the incidence of rRT-PCR positive tests among EMS personnel following PPE protocols (wearing a mask, eye protection, gloves, and a gown) was low: 0.57 per 10,000 person-days (30 positive tests in 525,154 person-days).

**Level of Evidence: Low certainty evidence**

Amiodarone, IV: *not added*

The previous NEMLC recommendation not to include bolus amiodarone for management of ventricular fibrillations or pulseless ventricular tachycardia not responsive to defibrillation, in the PHC STGs and EML was upheld. Previously, NEMLC recommended that amiodarone IV/IO should be administered at secondary level facilities. Furthermore, previous review of amiodarone in the Adult Hospital STGs and EML, 2019 edition found that the role of antiarrhythmics in adult cardiopulmonary resuscitation was uncertain:

***NEMLC report for the Adult Hospital Level Emergencies and injuries chapter (2017-9 review cycle):***

*However, recent meta-analyses suggest that there is uncertainty about the efficacy of antiarrhythmics in cardiac arrest to improve rates of return of spontaneous circulation, survival to hospital discharge or neurological outcomes when compared to placebo. Conflicting outcomes for survival to hospital admission was reported for use of antiarrhythmics in advanced life support: McLeod et al, 2017[5] showed that amiodarone (RR 1.18; 95% CI: 1.08 to 1.30) was associated with a statistically significant increase in survival to hospital admission, whilst Chowdury et al, 2017[6] showed that amiodarone had no significant effect on survival to admission (OR=1.33; 95% CI 0.91 to 1.97; $I_2$ = 92%; p=0.14).*

**Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR)**

Guidance on fluid recommendations: *amended*

The following text was deleted from the STG as not pragmatic for primary healthcare level of care:

Initiate fluids, IV/IO access

Sodium chloride 0.9%, IV, 1000 mL.

- ~~Consider giving a fluid bolus of 1 litre during CPR if an increase in preload may benefit the patient, e.g. hypovolaemia shock, distributive shock, haemorrhagic shock.~~
- ~~Avoid fluid boluses during CPR if an increase in the preload could be detrimental to the patient e.g. massive pulmonary embolism or cardiac tamponade.~~

**Additional guidance – termination of resuscitation (TOR)**

Duration of asystole: *amended*

A more objective statement was considered for inclusion in the PHC STG, *"Asystole of >20 minutes is considered unsurvivable".* However, there is a paucity of evidence that informs this decision, and most recommendations are based on consensus.[7]

The 2020 AHA guidelines note that in a recent meta-analysis of seven published studies (n=33,795 patients), only 0.13% (95% CI 0.03 to 0.58%) of patients who fulfilled the Basic Life Support (BLS) termination criteria survived to

[3] Atkins DL, Sasson C, Hsu A, Aziz K, Becker LB, Berg RA, et al.; 2022 Interim Guidance to Health Care Providers for Basic and Advanced Cardiac Life Support in Adults, Children, and Neonates With Suspected or Confirmed COVID-19: From the Emergency Cardiovascular Care Committee and Get With The Guidelines-Resuscitation Adult and Pediatric Task Forces of the American Heart Association in Collaboration With the American Academy of Pediatrics, American Association for Respiratory Care, the Society of Critical Care Anesthesiologists, and American Society of Anesthesiologists. Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes. 2022 Apr;15(4):e008900. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/35072519/

[4] Brown A, Schwarcz L, Counts CR, Barnard LM, Yang BY, Emert JM, et al. Risk for Acquiring Coronavirus Disease Illness among Emergency Medical Service Personnel Exposed to Aerosol-Generating Procedures. Emerg Infect Dis. 2021 Sep;27(9):2340-2348. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/34197282/

[5] McLeod SL, Brignardello-Petersen R, Worster A, You J, Iansavichene A, Guyatt G, Cheskes S. Comparative effectiveness of antiarrhythmics for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest: A systematic review and network meta-analysis. Resuscitation. 2017 Dec;121:90-97. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/29037886

[6] Chowdhury A, Fernandes B, Melhuish TM, White LD. Antiarrhythmics in Cardiac Arrest: A Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis. Heart Lung Circ. 2018 Mar;27(3):280-290. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/28988724

[7] 2020 American Heart Association. 2020 American Heart Association Guidelines for CPR and ECC https://cpr.heart.org/en/resuscitation-science/cpr-and-ecc-guidelines

hospital discharge[8]. The BLS TOR rule recommends terminating resuscitation if all the following three criteria are met: the cardiac arrest was not witnessed by EMS personnel, no return of spontaneous circulation (ROSC) before transport, and no shock delivered before transport.
The 2020 AHA guidelines also note in a meta-analysis of two published studies (n=10,178), only 0.01% (95% CI, 0.00-0.07%) of patients who fulfilled the ALS termination criteria survived to hospital discharge. The ALS TOR rule recommends terminating resuscitation if all the following four criteria are fulfilled: the cardiac arrest was not witnessed, there was no bystander CPR, there was an absence of ROSC before transport, and an absence of defibrillation before transport.
Both the BLS and ALS TOR (termination of resuscitation) rules have been shown to have good predictive value.[9]
**Level of Evidence: Low certainty evidence**

**NEMLC MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022:**
NEMLC accepted the proposed recommendation ("*Asystole of >20 minutes is considered unsurvivable"*). However, the STG text was amended further as below

**Amended from:**

~~Consider stopping resuscitation attempts and pronouncing death if:~~
- ~~Further resuscitation is clearly clinically inappropriate, e.g. incurable underlying disease, or~~
- ~~The decision to stop CPR attempts depends on the specifics of the individual patient and should be based on clinical judgement~~
- ~~Consider continuing CPR attempts until enough information is available to inform the decision to stop~~
- ~~This decision should take into consideration the potential risk that CPR poses to the rescuer, considering the prevalence of COVID-19.~~
- ~~Asystole of >20 minutes is considered unsurvivable.~~

~~Consider carrying on for longer especially when:~~
- ~~hypothermia and drowning~~
- ~~poisoning or medicine overdose~~
- ~~neurotoxic envenomation (e.g.black and green mamba or Cape cobra snakebite) – see Section 21.3.1.4: Snakebites~~

**Amended To:**

Termination of resuscitation:
- The decision to stop CPR attempts depends on the specifics of the individual patient and should be based on clinical judgement.
- Consider stopping resuscitation attempts and pronouncing death if there is incurable underlying disease, or if asystole > 20 minutes or in the absence of the factors for prolonging resuscitation as listed below.

Consider carrying on for longer especially with:
- hypothermia and drowning
- poisoning or medicine overdose
- neurotoxic envenomation (e.g.black and green mamba or Cape cobra snakebite) – see Section 21.3.1.4: Snakebites

This decision should take into consideration the potential risk that CPR poses to the rescuer e.g. infectious diseases.

### 21.1.2 CARDIAC ARREST, CHILDREN

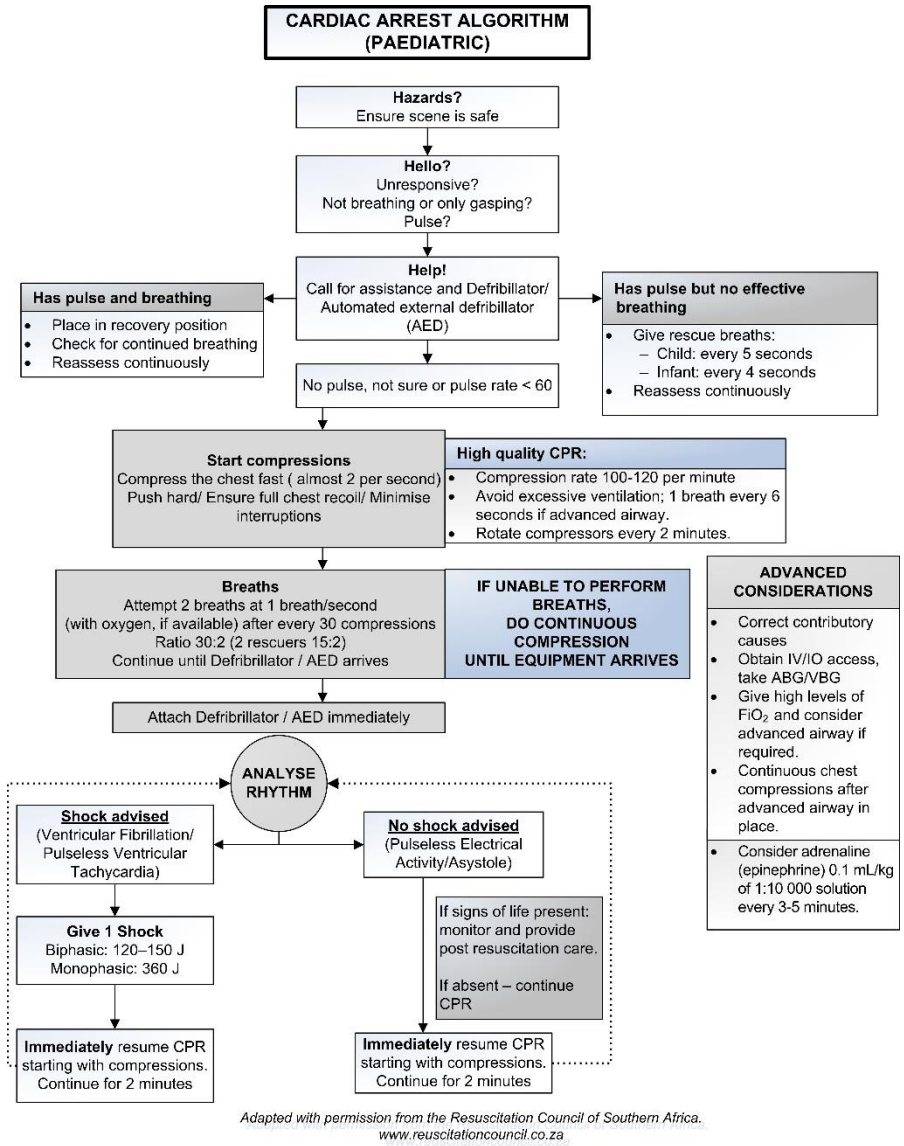
**Immediate emergency medicine treatment**
Cardiac arrest algorithm: Amended

The cardiac arrest algorithm has been updated in alignment with the most recent advanced cardiovascular life support (ACLS) and basic life support (BLS) guidance, which includes rescue breaths every 2 seconds for infants and every 3 seconds for children. According to the American Heart Association 2020 Guidelines for CPR (AHA 2020)[10], *"When performing CPR in infants and children with an advanced airway, it may be reasonable to target a respiratory rate range of 1 breath every 2 to 3 seconds (20-30/min), accounting for age and clinical condition. Rates exceeding these recommendations may compromise hemodynamics."*

[8] Ebell MH, Vellinga A, Masterson S, Yun P. Meta-analysis of the accuracy of termination of resuscitation rules for out-of-hospital cardiac arrest. Emerg Med J. 2019 Aug;36(8):479-484. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31142552/
[9] Lin YY, Lai YY, Chang HC, Lu CH, Chiu PW, Kuo YS, Huang SP, et al. Predictive performances of ALS and BLS termination of resuscitation rules in out-of-hospital cardiac arrest for different resuscitation protocols. BMC Emerg Med. 2022 Mar 27;22(1):53. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/35346055/
[10] 2020 American Heart Association Guidelines for Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation and Emergency Cardiovascular Care. Last accessed online Mar 2024: https://professional.heart.org/en/science-news/2020-aha-guidelines-for-cpr-and-ecc

Following, engagement with the Resus Council of South Africa (RCSA) regarding the recommended number of rescue breaths for children and infants, we received confirmation that the RSCA has subsequently amended its algorithm to align with the AHA guidance i.e. rescue breaths every 2 seconds for infants and every 3 seconds for children[11].

**Amended from:**




*Adapted with permission from the Resuscitation Council of Southern Africa.*
*www.reuscitationcouncil.co.za*

[11] Email Correspondence on file. 10 May 2024

**Amended to:**

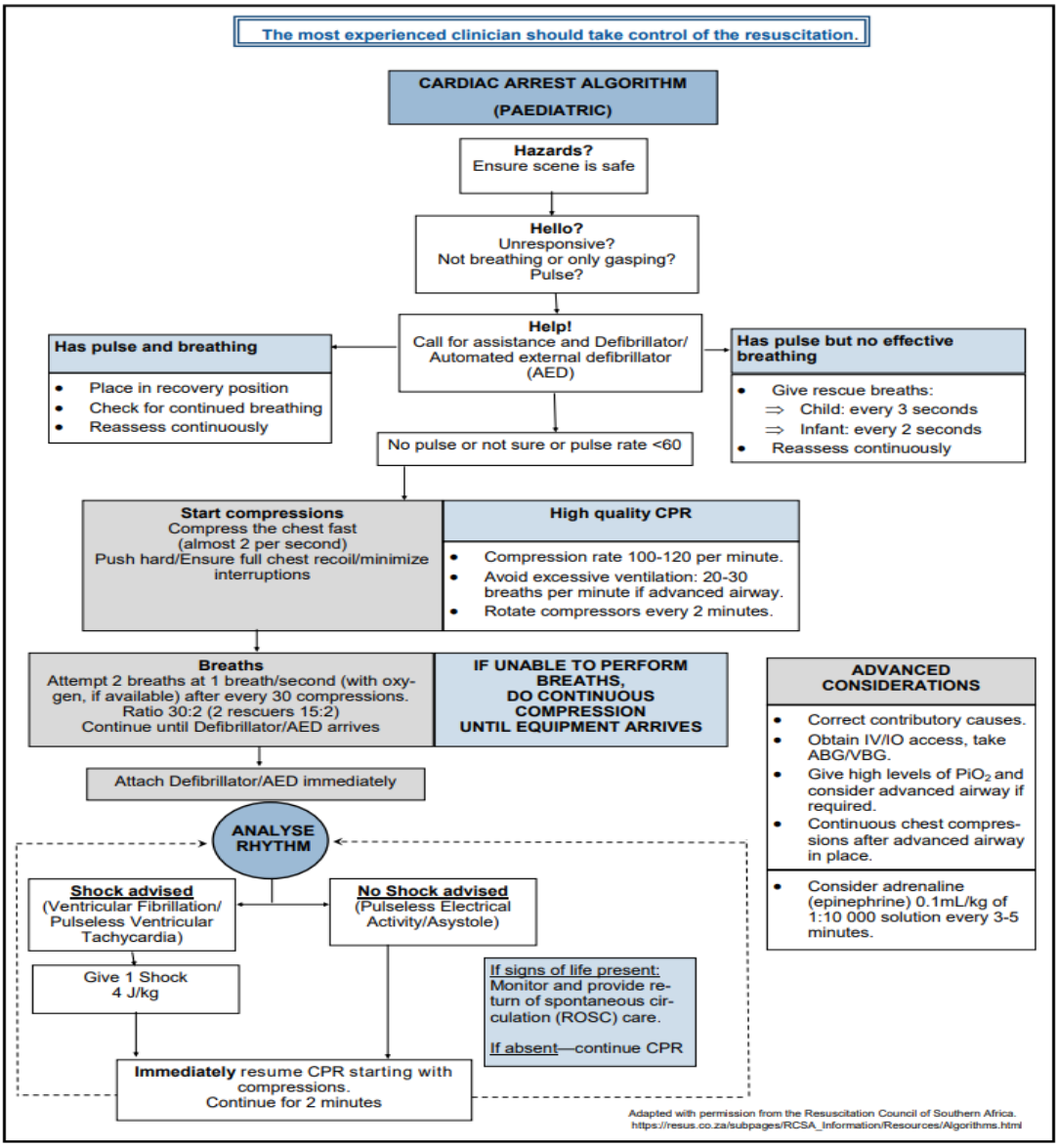



Figure 21.3 Advanced cardiac arrest algorithm for children

Paediatric resuscitation tape weight measurements: *Added*

Age-based weight estimates: *Added*

Child weight estimation using paediatric resuscitation tape, taking into consideration body composition and habitus,[12] has been included in the STG. Tape measurements are considered to be more accurate than age-based formulas and the PAWPER tape is the most accurate tape measure in the South African setting[13]; and it is validated in our setting[14]. If tape measures are not available (including the Broselow tape[15]), then age-based weight estimates may be used – the following formula is used in the Advanced Paediatric Life Support protocol: weight(kg) = (age (yrs) +4) X2, calculation.[16]

**Level of Evidence: Low certainty**

[12] Wells M, Goldstein LN, Bentley A. The accuracy of emergency weight estimation systems in children-a systematic review and meta-analysis. Int J Emerg Med. 2017 Sep 21;10(1):29. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28936627/

[13] Manyoni MJ, Goldstein LN, Wells M. A comparison of four weight estimation systems for paediatric resuscitation. S Afr J Surg. 2019 Jun;57(2):40-46. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31342683/

[14] Wells M. A validation of the PAWPER XL-MAC tape for total body weight estimation in preschool children from low- and middle-income countries. PLoS One. 2019 Jan 7;14(1):e0210332. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/30615693/

[15] Wells M, Goldstein LN, Bentley A, Basnett S, Monteith I. The accuracy of the Broselow tape as a weight estimation tool and a drug-dosing guide - A systematic review and meta-analysis. Resuscitation. 2017 Dec;121:9-33. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/28958796/

[16] Advanced Life Support Group (ALSG). Advanced Paediatric Life Support: A Practical Approach to Emergencies, 6th Edition. Chichester (West Sussex, UK): BMJ Books; 2016.

**Guidance to continue with resuscitation,** *amended*

The following STG text was amended for correctness and consistency

**Consider carrying on** for longer especially with
- » hypothermia and drowning
- » ~~suspected~~ poisoning or medicine overdose ~~or carbon monoxide poisoning~~
- » neurotoxic envenomation (e.g.black and green mamba or Cape cobra snakebite) – see Section 21.3.1.4: Snakebites

This decision should take into consideration the potential risk that CPR poses to the rescuer e.g. infectious diseases.

## 21.1.5 MANAGEMENT OF SUSPECTED CHOKING/FOREIGN BODY ASPIRATION IN CHILDREN

Choking algorithm & related guidance: *Amended*

The algorithm for the management of choking in children has been updated to the latest algorithm (2021) from the Resus Council of South Africa[17]. Amendments are as tabulated below and include:

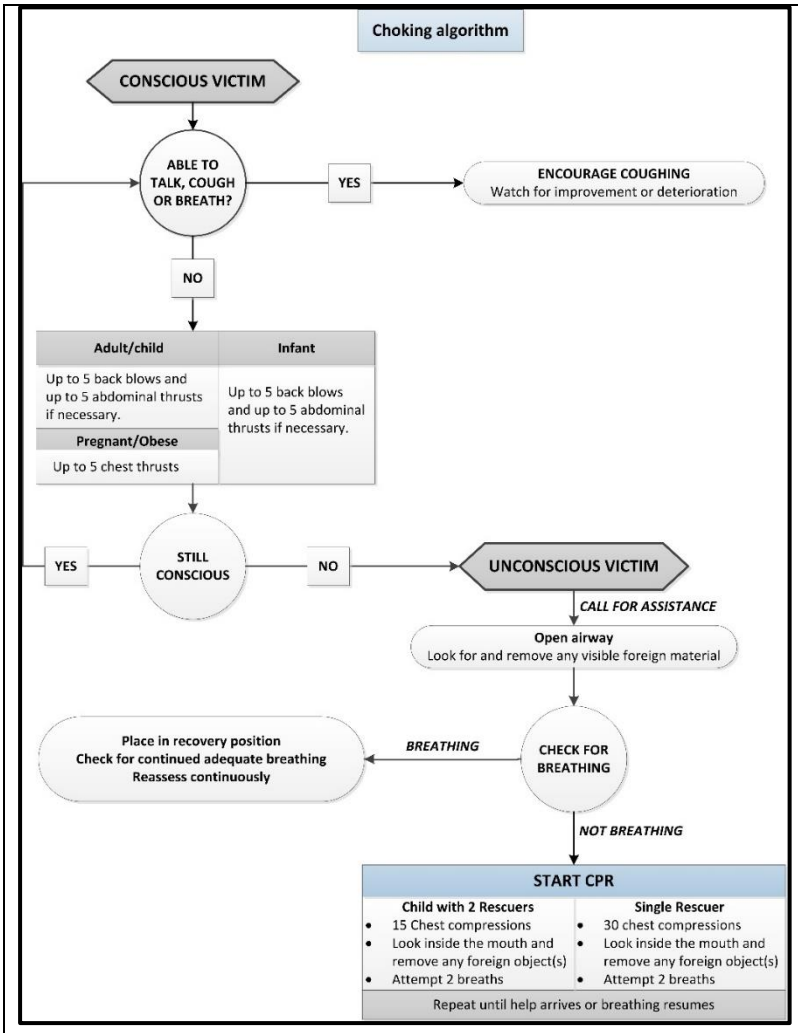
- Adults & children - amended from *'5 back blows & up to 5 abdominal thrusts if necessary'* to *'up to 5 abdominal thrusts and if ineffective up to 5 back slaps.'*
- Infants - amended from *'Up to 5 back blows and up to 5 abdominal thrusts'* to *'Up to 5 back slaps. And up to 5 chest thrusts if necessary.'*

**Amended from:**

| | |
|---|---|
| If the child is **able to talk and breathe** | Encourage the child to cough repeatedly while arranging transfer to hospital urgently with supervision. |
| If the child is **conscious but with no effective cough or breathing** | Give 5 back blows, followed by 5 chest/ abdominal thrusts, followed by re-assessment of breathing. and then repeated as a cycle until recovery or child becomes unconscious. See differences below for infants and children. |
| If the child is **unconscious with no effective breathing** | Call for assistance.<br>Open airway and check for any visible foreign body and remove.<br>Start CPR: compressions and breaths (30:2) (check airway for foreign body each time before giving breaths). |

(Infant: < 1 year of age; Child: > 1 year of age until puberty).

[17] Resus Council of S.Africa. Choking algorithm 2021 https://resus.co.za/Documents/Algorithms/RESUS%20CHOKING%20ALGORITHM.pdf




**Amended to:**

| | |
|---|---|
| If the child is **able to talk and breathe** | Encourage the child to cough repeatedly while arranging transfer to hospital urgently with supervision. |
| If the child is **conscious but with no effective cough or breathing** | Give up to 5 abdominal thrusts and if ineffective up to 5 back slaps, followed by re-assessment of breathing. Repeat as a cycle until recovery or child becomes unconscious. See technique below and figure 21.4 for differences between infants and children. |
| If the child is **unconscious with no effective breathing** | Call for assistance.<br>Open airway and check for any visible foreign body and remove.<br>Start CPR: compressions and breaths (30:2) (check airway for foreign body each time before giving breaths). |

(Infant: < 1 year of age; Child: > 1 year of age until puberty).

Table 21.3: Managing suspected choking/foreign body aspiration in children

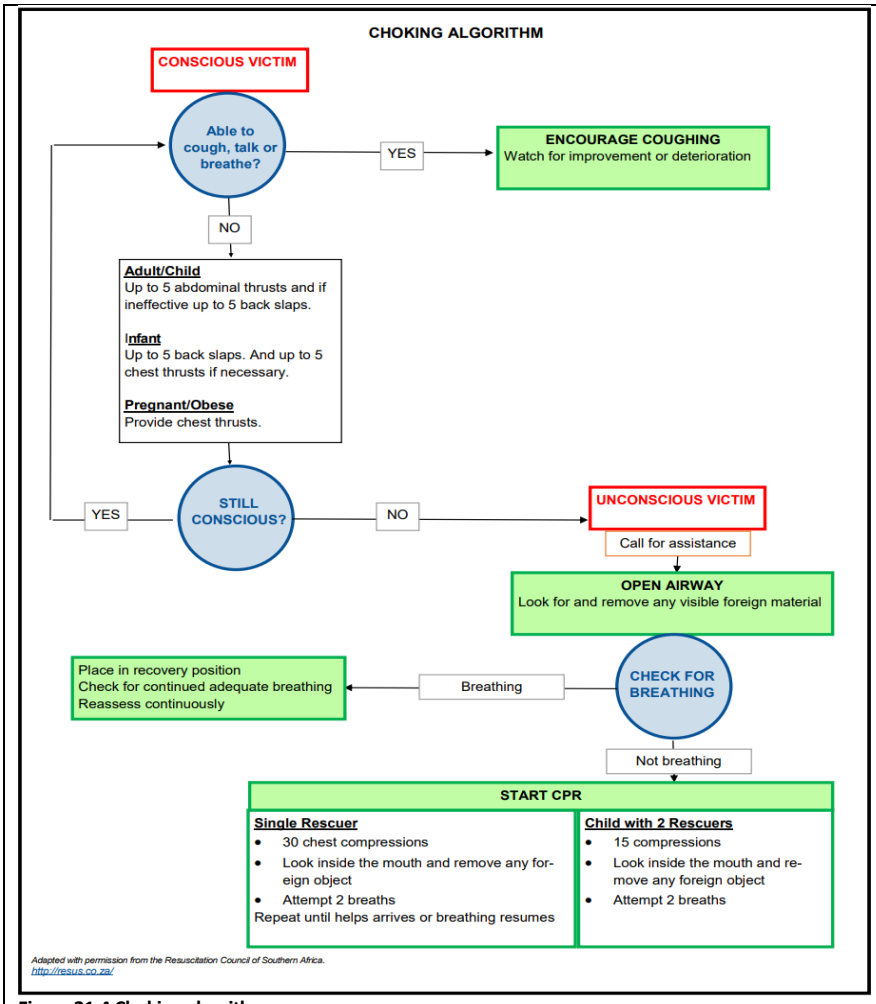



**Figure 21.4 Choking algorithm**

## 21.2. MEDICAL EMERGENCIES

### 21.2.1 PAEDITARIC EMERGENCIES

Referral for children with cerebral palsy: *Not added*

External comment received from RuRehab to refer children with cerebral palsy for neurodevelopmental assessment and rehabilitation was not supported in this section but has more appropriately been included under Section 15.7 Cerebral palsy.

#### 21.2.1.1 RAPID TRIAGE OF CHILDREN PRESENTING WITH ACUTE CONDITIONS IN CLINICS AND CHCS

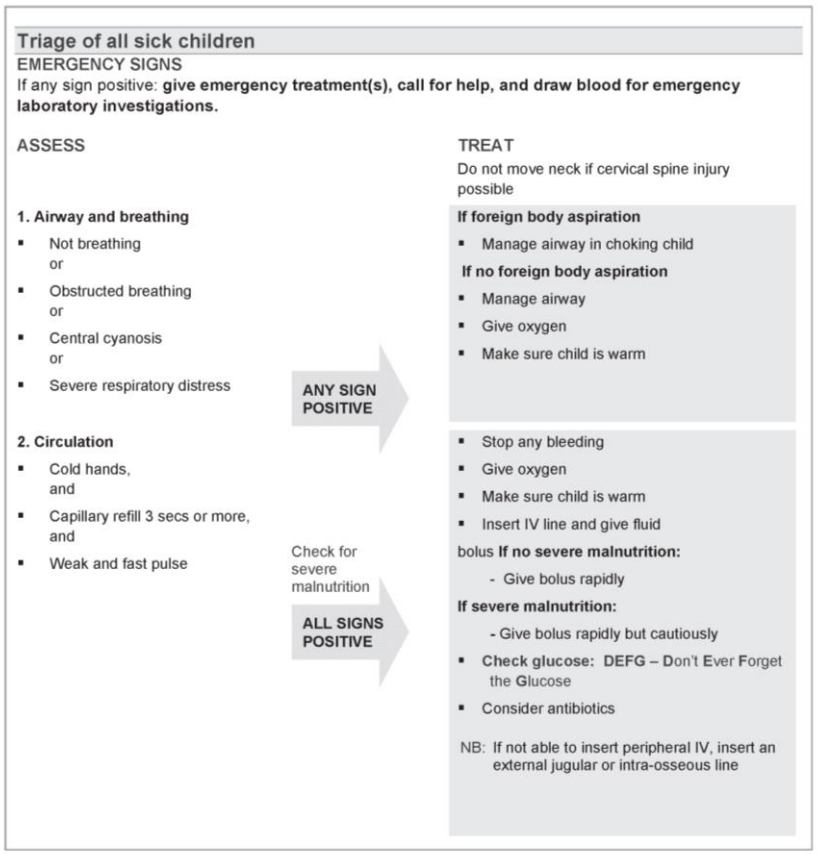
Triage process of all sick children**:** *Amended*

Guidance on the triage of sick children was updated to include cross references to other relevant sections of the EML for further information on management of sick children and duplicated text was removed. Guidance was also aligned to the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) guidelines 2022[18].

[18] National Department of Health. Integrated management of childhood illness. 2022 https://knowledgehub.health.gov.za/elibrary/integrated-management-childhood-illness-2022

**Amended from:**

**Triage is the process of rapidly examining all sick children when they first arrive at clinics in order to place them in one of three categories (Emergency, Priority, Non-urgent):**



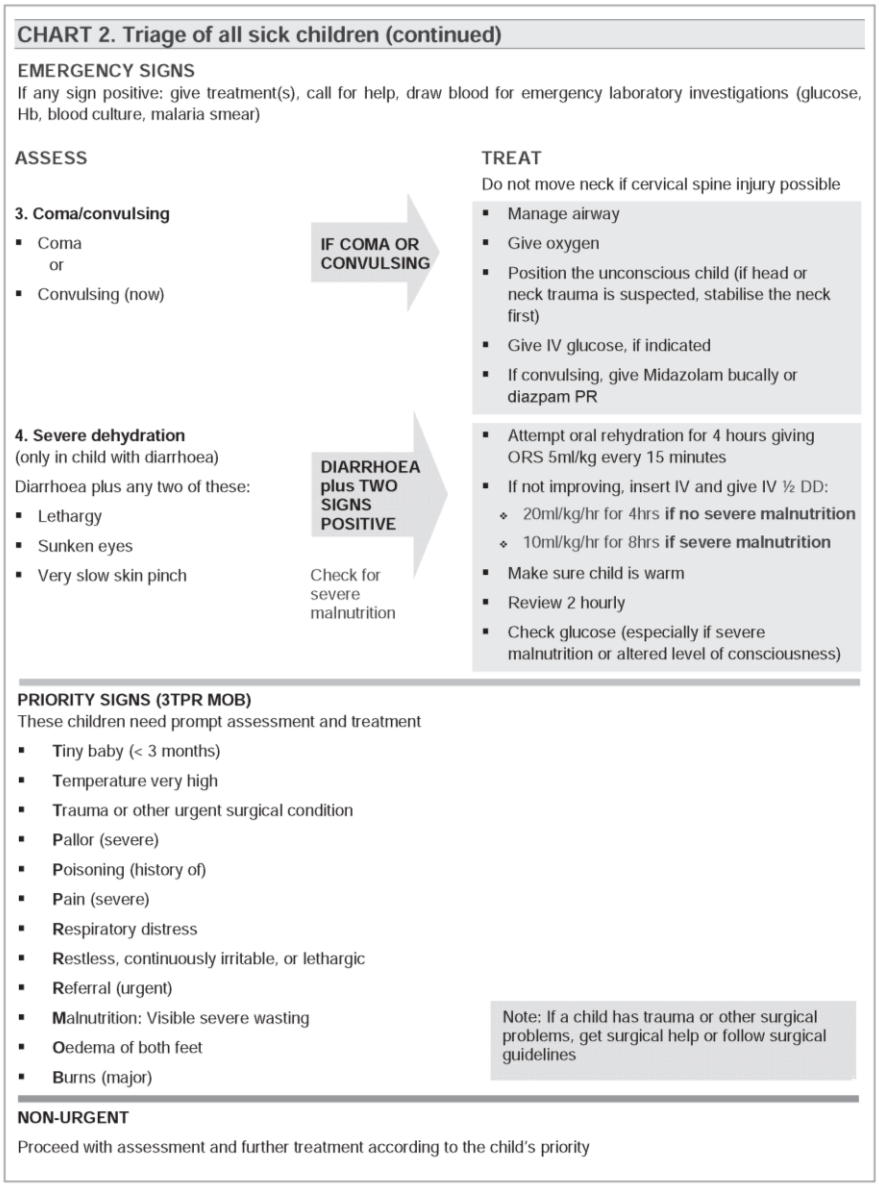



Figure 21.5: Triage of sick children
*Adapted from Pocketbook of Hospital Care for Children. Management of Common Childhood Illnesses. National Department of Health, South Africa, 2016. www.health.gov.za/*

If any emergency sign is present, give emergency treatment(s), call for help, and draw blood for emergency laboratory investigations as clinically indicated.

**(A&B) Airway and Breathing**

Not breathing
**or**
Obstructed breathing
**or**
Central cyanosis
**or**
Severe respiratory distress

**(C) Circulation**

Cold hands
**and**
Capillary refill ≥3 seconds
**and**
Weak and fast pulse

**(C) Coma/convulsing**

Coma
**or**
Convulsing (now)

**(D) Severe dehydration** (e.g. in child with diarrhoea)

Diarrhoea

**plus**

Any two of:

- Lethargy
- Sunken eyes
- Very slow skin pinch

**PRIORITY**

**Priority signs**

These children need prompt assessment and treatment
Tiny baby (< 3 months of age)
High Temperature
Trauma or other urgent surgical condition
Pallor (severe)
Poisoning (history of)
Pain (severe)
Respiratory distress
Restless, continuously irritable, or lethargic
Referred for urgent attention
Malnutrition: visible severe wasting
Oedema of both feet
Burns (major)

**NON-URGENT (queue)**

No emergency or priority signs.
Proceed with assessment and further treatment according to the child's priority.

**The Emergency Triage Assessment and Treatment (ETAT) tool, presented above, should be a minimum standard of triage in community health centres.**

(Alternative tool P-SATS is available, see the Paediatric Hospital level STGs and EML).

## Amended to:

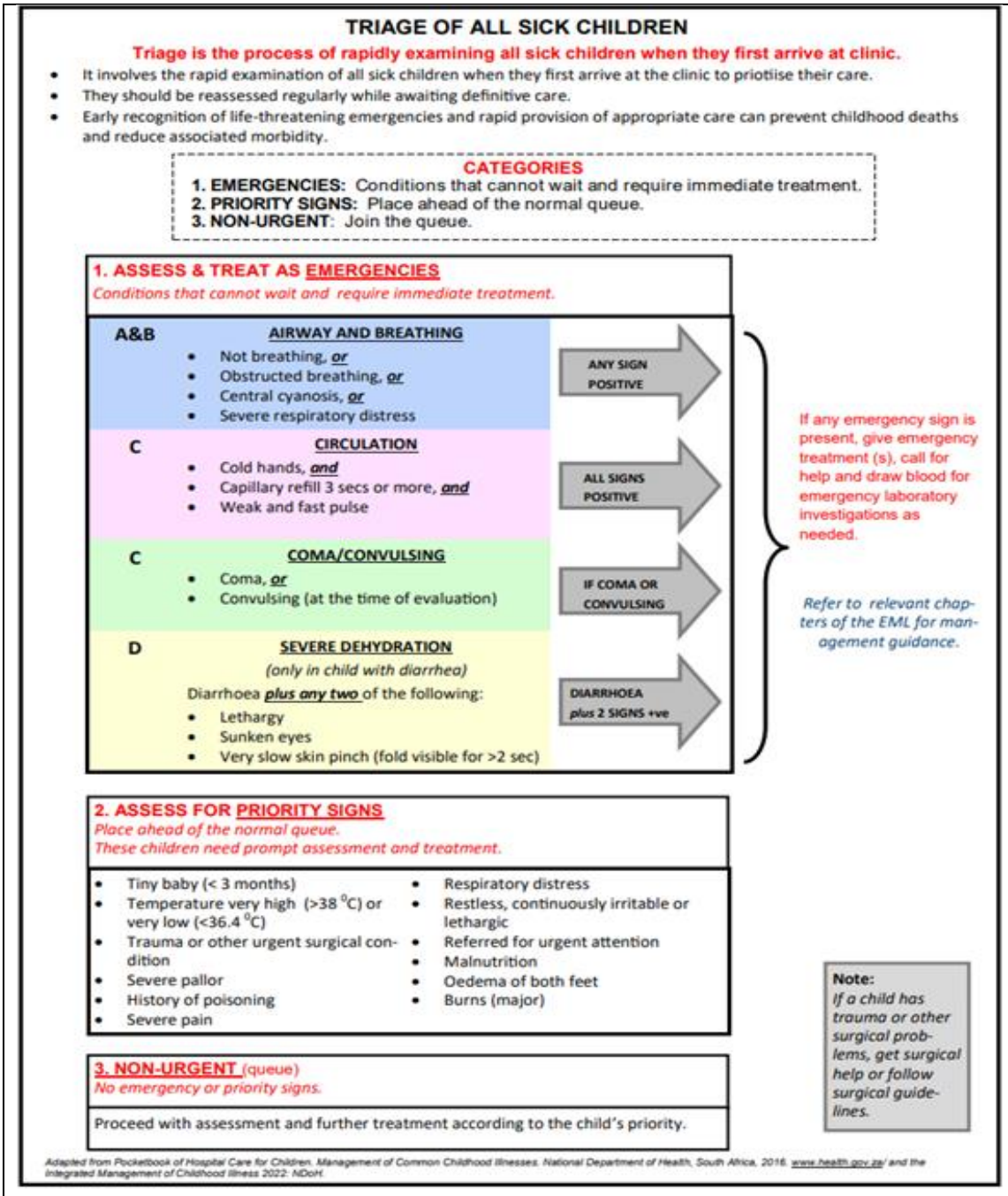



Figure 21.5: Triage of sick children

**The Emergency Triage Assessment and Treatment (ETAT) triage process, presented above, should be a minimum standard of triage in community health centres.**

For management guidance, refer to relevant sections of the EML as listed below:
For foreign body aspiration see Section 21.1.5
For acute asthma see Section 17.1.1
For acute bronchiolitis see Section 17.1.3
For croup see Section 17.2.1
For shock see Section 21.2.11
For hypoglycaemia and hypoglycaemic coma see Section 21.2.6
For acute diarrhoea see Section 2.9.1

## 21.2.4 DELIRIUM

Guidance on Physical Restraint: *added*

The guidance as tabulated below was added to the STG

**CAUTION – Physical Restraint**

- » Worsens the outcomes of delirious patients: this is a last resort when all else has failed and is a short-term measure until chemical restraint and other measures have been achieved.
- » Manual restraint: respectful, controlled, applied by personnel of the same sex as the patient.
- » Mechanical restraint: only if absolutely necessary to protect the patient and others for as short a time as possible. Document the type, sites and duration of any restraints used. 15-minute monitoring of vital signs, the mental state, restraint sites, and reasons for use.

**Medicine treatment:** *guidance amended*

Guidance on management of delirium amended as tabulated below

**MEDICINE TREATMENT**

- » ~~Treat the underlying medical condition.~~
- » Manage the underlying medical or surgical condition.
- » The aim is to contain the person while awaiting transfer to hospital and to enable initial care of the underlying condition.
- » Keep antipsychotic or benzodiazepine use to a minimum.
- » Use small doses regularly rather than large doses less frequently.
- » Adjust doses according to clinical circumstances, e.g., lower doses in the elderly, debilitated.

**Acute management,** *aligned*

Guidance for the acute management of delirium has been aligned with a cross reference to Section 16.1.2 and 16.1.3 of the STG as tabulated below

For ~~the management of~~ severe aggression and disruptive behaviour, see Section 16.1.2 ~~15.1~~: Aggressive, disruptive behaviour in adults or Section 16.1.3 Aggressive, disruptive behaviour in children and adolescents.

Diazepam – dose frequency: *Clarified*

The frequency for administering a second dose of diazepam IV has been specified as tabulated below:

**AMENDED FROM**

- Diazepam, slow IV, 10 mg no faster than 5 mg/minute for immediate sedative or hypnotic action.
  If no response, give a 2nd dose.

**AMENDED TO:**

- Diazepam, slow IV, 10 mg no faster than 5 mg/minute for immediate sedative or hypnotic action.
  - If no response, give a 2nd dose after 30 to 60 minutes.

Benzodiazepines, *amended*

The cautions for the use of benzodiazepines have been amended to accommodate for the addition of olanzapine and oral haloperidol to the STG as tabulated below

**CAUTION - Benzodiazepines**

- » Benzodiazepines, especially diazepam IV, can cause respiratory depression.
- » Monitor vital signs closely during and after administration. In the frail and elderly patient or where respiratory depression is a concern, reduce the dose by half.
- » The safest route of administration is oral followed by IM with the IV route having the highest risk of respiratory depression and arrest. Use the safest route wherever possible.
- » In patients with respiratory insufficiency: use oral haloperidol or olanzapine oro-dispersible tablets, IM, or oral instead of IM or IV benzodiazepines. ~~Use haloperidol instead of benzodiazepines in patients with respiratory insufficiency.~~
- » Do NOT use IM olanzapine with IM/IV benzodiazepines.
- » In the short-term, benzodiazepines can aggravate delirium.
- » Allow at least 15–30 minutes for the medication to take effect. Repeated IM doses of benzodiazepines may result in toxicity owing to accumulation.

Haloperidol, IM: *retained*
Olanzapine, oro-dispersible: *added*
Olanzapine, IM: *added*

Refer to the medicine review on the Knowledge Hub or included below for more information.

| **PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITTEE RECOMMENDATION:** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Type of recommendation** | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
| | | | | **X** | |
| **Recommendation:** The PHC/ Adult Hospital Level Committee suggests using olanzapine (orodispersible and parenteral formulations) as an option to manage delirium where non-pharmacological management is not sufficient and if haloperidol, intramuscular formulation is unavailable<br>*Rationale:* Available low-quality evidence shows that olanzapine is comparable to haloperidol.<br>**Level of Evidence: Low to very low certainty evidence**<br>**Review indicator:** Evidence of harm, efficacy | | | | | |
| **NEMLC RECOMMENDATION (20 OCTOBER 2022 MEETING):**<br>NEMLC recommended the use of olanzapine oro-dispersible tablet or IM injection for delirium with agitated and acutely disturbed behaviour. Once the patient is able to swallow, to continue with oral haloperidol or olanzapine, until behaviour is contained. | | | | | |
| **Monitoring and evaluation considerations** | | | | | |
| **Research priorities** | | | | | |

Oro-dispersible olanzapine dissolves on the tongue and is absorbed via the oral mucosa and therefore may be administered in those who cannot/will not swallow which may be beneficial in agitated patients.

The STG has been amended as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

If the most likely cause of delirium is a medical disorder and if very restless:

- Haloperidol, IM, 5 mg, immediately.
  In elderly: 2.5 mg, immediately.
  If no response give a second dose.

**Amended to:**

If the most likely cause of delirium is a medical disorder and if very restless or agitated:

- Haloperidol, oral, 0.75–1.5 mg, repeated in 30–60 minutes, if required

OR

If unable to swallow or oral medication declined:

- Haloperidol, IM, 0.5–1mg.

OR

If haloperidol, IM is not available:

- Olanzapine, oral dispersible tablet or IM, 2.5–5 mg.
  - Use lowest dose with caution in the elderly
  - May be repeated in 30–60 minutes, if required
  - Monitor vital signs and beware of oversedation, neuroleptic malignant syndrome, and acute dystonia.

**Alcoholics/ Malnourished (adults)**

Thiamine, parenteral: *dose & route of administration amended*

Refer to the evidence summary on Knowledge Hub for more information.

- *Thiamine dose:* There is limited evidence - a Cochrane review[19] reviewed one RCT (n=169)[20] in which participants with a history of chronic alcohol use were assigned to one of five doses of IM thiamine (5, 20, 50, 100 and 200 mg once daily), with outcomes measured after 2 days of treatment. On day 3 of treatment, participants were assessed by a psychologist on the delayed alternation test. This RCT demonstrated a significant difference favouring a dose of 200mg a day compared to 5mg/day in the number of trials taken to reach criteria on a delayed alternation test (MD -17.90, 95% CI -35.4 to -0.40, P = 0.04). Guideline recommendations on the dose of thiamine for the management of patients with suspected or diagnosed Wernicke's encephalopathy varies, with case series reports suggesting that doses of 500mg or more IV, were safe and efficacious. While the Cochrane reviewers concluded that no good evidence could be derived from available RCTs to help physicians choose the right dose, frequency, route or duration of thiamine treatment for preventing or treating WKS due to alcohol abuse, most guidelines recommend higher doses of thiamine i.e. 100mg and more.
- *Route of administration:* It was noted that the SAMF[21], 2016 as well as the British National Formulary[22] cautions about anaphylactic reactions associated with IV administration of thiamine; the latter citing MHRA/CHM advice, 2007:

  IMPORTANT SAFETY INFORMATION MHRA/CHM ADVICE (SEPTEMBER 2007):
  Although potentially serious allergic adverse reactions may rarely occur during, or shortly after, parenteral administration, the CHM has recommended that:
  - This should not preclude the use of parenteral thiamine in patients where this route of administration is required, particularly in patients at risk of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome where treatment with thiamine is essential;
  - Intravenous administration should be by infusion over 30 minutes;
  - Facilities for treating anaphylaxis (including resuscitation facilities) should be available when parenteral thiamine is administered.
- *Pragmatic implications:* Thiamine is only available as 100 mg/mL vials and a large volume e.g. 5 mL by IM injection may be poorly tolerated by patients and possibly considered to be impractical.

**Recommendations:**

- Dose be amended to a maximum of 200 mg IM in both the Adult Hospital and PHC STGs and EML for prevention of Wernicke's encephalopathy.

**NEMLC MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022:**
NEMLC accepted the proposal to amend the dose of thiamine from "100mg" to "200mg", aligned with available RCT evidence, for the prevention of Wernicke's encephalopathy. NEMLC also deliberated on the route of administration and recommended that for the prevention of Wernicke's encephalopathy, that thiamine should be administered intramuscularly and not by the intravenous route.

## 21.2.6 HYPOGLYCAEMIA AND HYPOGLYCAEMIC COMA

Thiamine, IV/IM: *aligned*

Aligned with section 21.2.4: Delirium – see above.

## 21.2.8 PULMONARY OEDEMA, ACUTE

**If patient very anxious or restless**

Morphine, IV: *deleted & caution added to the STG*

[19] Day E, Bentham PW, Callaghan R, Kuruvilla T, George S. Thiamine for prevention and treatment of Wernicke-Korsakoff Syndrome in people who abuse alcohol. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013 Jul 1;2013(7):CD004033. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/23818100/

[20] Ambrose ML, Bowden SC, Whelan G. Thiamin treatment and working memory function of alcohol-dependent people: preliminary findings. Alcohol Clin Exp Res. 2001 Jan;25(1):112-6. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/11198705/

[21] South African Medicines Formulary 14th Ed.

[22] British National Formulary, 2020

Refer to the medicine review on the Knowledge Hub or below or alternatively, the publication by Hendrikse et al.[23] for further detail.

| PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITTEE RECOMMENDATION: | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Type of recommendation** | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
| | | **x** | | | |
| **Recommendation:** The PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee suggests not to use morphine for the treatment of acute pulmonary distress.<br>*Rationale:* Available evidence shows that morphine may increase in-hospital and all-cause mortality and may result in a large increase in invasive mechanical ventilation compared to not using morphine. No available data could be found on whether morphine increases non-fatal adverse events, ICU or hospital length of stay.<br>**Level of Evidence:** Low certainty of evidence<br>**Review indicator:** New high-quality evidence of a clinically relevant benefit | | | | | |
| **NEMLC RECCOMENDATION – 23 JUNE 2022:**<br>**NEMLC MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022:**<br>NEMLC accepted the proposal to remove morphine for the treatment of acute pulmonary distress. However, recommended that a caution be included in the STG, accordingly:<br>**CAUTION**<br>Do not use morphine for pulmonary oedema, as there is observational data providing a signal of harm.<br>Furthermore, once the respective chapter is finalised, it was recommended that a circular be drafted and disseminated regarding the harms associated with use of morphine for distress in pulmonary oedema. | | | | | |
| **Monitoring and evaluation considerations** | | | | | |
| **Research priorities** | | | | | |

## 21.2.9 SHOCK

Fluid replacement in children – sodium chloride 0.9%: *Dose amended*
Fluid replacement in children – ringers lactate: A*dded*

The dose of sodium chloride 0.9% as an IV bolus dose for the management of shock in children was amended from 20mL/kg as a rapid bolus to 10mL/kg over 20 minutes. This has been aligned to the Integrated Management of Childhood Illness (IMCI) guidelines 2022[24].

Furthermore, ringers lactate has been added as an alternative fluid replacement solution to sodium chloride 0.9% in alignment with the Paediatric EML.

## 21.2.10 ANAPHYLAXIS

**General measures**

Guidance on anaphylaxis associated with vaccinations: *added*
Guidance was included in the STG on non-pharmacological management of anaphylaxis associated with vaccinations, aligned with WHO guidance[25], as follows:

Anaphylaxis associated with vaccinations:
» Always keep a fully equipped emergency tray at the immunisation point.
» It is advisable to observe clients for 15 minutes after a vaccination. If a client is known with severe allergies, an observation period of 30 minutes is advised.

[23] Hendrikse C, Ngah V, Kallon II, Thom G, Leong TD, Cohen K, McCaul M. Signal of harm in morphine use in adults with acute pulmonary oedema: A rapid systematic review. S Afr Med J. 2023 Aug 3;113(8):39-43. doi: 10.7196/SAMJ.2023.v113i8.348. PMID: 37882120.
[24] National Department of Health. Integrated management of childhood illness. 2022. https://knowledgehub.health.gov.za/elibrary/integrated-management-childhood-illness-2022
[25] Immunization stress-related response. A manual for program managers and health professionals to prevent, identify and respond to stress related responses following immunization. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2019. https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/330277

» Clients who develop symptoms should be assessed for possible vaccination associated anaphylaxis by considering the following:
  - If signs and symptoms are generalised – involving more than 2 body systems, manage as anaphylaxis.
  - If signs and symptoms are serious or life-threatening, even if only one body system is involved (including hypotension, respiratory distress significant swelling of lips or tongue), treat as anaphylaxis.
  - If isolated rash in an otherwise well client, monitor for 30 minutes.
» Collapse following vaccination might be due to anaphylaxis or other causes such as a vasovagal episode:
  - Call for help and put patient on his/her back and raise legs.
  - Check if responsive – if unresponsive, commence CPR (See section 21.1)
  - A vasovagal episode is usually associated with a transient loss of consciousness (< 1 minute), relieved by raising the legs when supine, transient low BP and low HR.
  - Collapsing after vaccination usually occurs 5-10 minutes post-vaccination, but can occur up to an hour afterwards.
  - Treat as anaphylaxis if loss of consciousness is not brief and not relieved by raising the legs, if any of the signs or symptoms of anaphylaxis occur.

| | ANAPHYLAXIS | ACUTE STRESS RESPONSE | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | GENERAL | VASOVAGAL REACTION WITH SYNCOPE |
| Onset | Usually 5 min after immunization but may be delayed up to 60 min | Sudden, occurs before, during or shortly after (< 5 min) immunization | Sudden, occurs before, during or shortly after (< 5 min) immunization. May present after 5 min if the individual stands suddenly. |
| System | | | |
| Skin | Generalized urticaria (hives) or generalized erythema, angioedema, localized or generalized, generalized pruritus with or without skin rash, generalized prickle sensation, localized injection site urticaria, red and itchy eyes | Pale, sweaty, cold, clammy | Pale, sweaty, cold, clammy |
| Respiratory | Persistent cough, noisy breathing and airway constriction: wheeze, stridor. If very severe, respiratory arrest. | Hyperventilation (rapid, deep breathing) | Normal to deep breaths |
| Cardiovascular | ↑ heart rate, ↓ blood pressure, circulatory arrest | ↑heart rate, normal or ↑systolic blood pressure | ↓ heart rate with or without transient ↓in blood pressure |
| Gastrointestinal | Nausea, vomiting, abdominal cramps | Nausea | Nausea, vomiting |
| Neurological and other symptoms | Uneasiness, restlessness, agitation, loss of consciousness, little response when supine or lying flat | Fearfulness, light-headedness dizziness, numbness, weakness, tingling around the lips, spasms in hands, feet | Transient loss of consciousness, good response once supine or lying flat, with or without tonic–clonic seizure |

Table 21.5: Differences between anaphylaxis, general acute stress response and vasovagal reaction with syncope
*Source: Immunization stress-related response. A manual for program managers and health professionals to prevent, identify and respond to stress related responses following immunization. Geneva: World Health Organization; 2019.*
*https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/330277*

Management – salbutamol nebulized: *Dose clarified*
Management – ipratropium bromide nebulized in adults and children: *Doses clarified*

The doses of nebulized salbutamol and ipratropium bromide for the management of wheeze have been aligned to updated guidance in the PHC Chp 17 Respiratory chapter Section 17.1.1 Acute asthma. Updates are as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

**If wheeze:**

- Salbutamol 0.5%, solution, nebulised, with high flow oxygen.
  .5–1 mL (2.5–5 mg) salbutamol 0.5% solution, in 4 mL of sodium chloride 0.9%.

**AND**

- Ipratropium bromide, solution, added to salbutamol solution.
  Children: 0.5–1 mL (0.125–0.25 mg)
  Adults: 2 mL (0.5 mg)

**Amended to:**

**If wheeze:**

- Salbutamol 0.5%, (5mg/mL) solution, nebulised, with high flow oxygen.

- Children: 0.5–1 mL (2.5–5 mg) salbutamol 0.5% solution,
- Adults: 1 mL (5 mg) salbutamol 0.5% solution,

**AND**

- Ipratropium bromide, solution, added to salbutamol solution.
  - Children: Ipratropium bromide 0.25mg/2ml; nebuliser solution: 2mL (0.25 mg) nebulised with salbutamol and made up to a total volume of 4mL with sodium chloride 0.9%.
  - Adults: Ipratropium bromide 0.5mg/2ml; nebuliser solution, 2 mL (0.5 mg) nebulised with salbutamol and made up to a total volume of 4mL with sodium chloride 0.9%.

## 21.3.TRAUMA AND INJURIES

Referral for patients with brain and spinal cord injury: *Not added*

External comment received from RuRehab to refer patients with brain and spinal cord injuries for rehabilitation was not supported as this referral guidance has been more appropriately included under, Section 15.8 Spinal Cord injuries.

## 21.3.1.1 ANIMAL BITES

**Suspected rabid bite**

**Background:** At the NEMLC meeting of the 6 December 2018, NEMLC accepted the following proposed changes made by the previous Adult Hospital Level Committee for the PHC Rabies STG:

**NEMLC MEETING OF 6 DECEMBER 2018:**

**A: POST EXPOSURE MANAGEMENT**

| AMENDMENT | EVIDENCE AND RATIONALE |
|---|---|
| **2.1 Wound Management** | |
| • Wound irrigation time changed from "5 to 10 minutes" to "15 minutes". | Thorough wound washing reduces the viral inoculum at the wound site[26]. **Level of Evidence: III Guidelines** |
| **2.2.1 Response to different severity of exposure** | |
| • Category risk assessment removed, and management based on severity of exposures, as per algorithm, below | Numbering of categories removed so that risk assessment is simpler and more pragmatic, encouraging acceptability by healthcare workers (and thus implementation more likely). **Level of Evidence: III Expert opinion** |

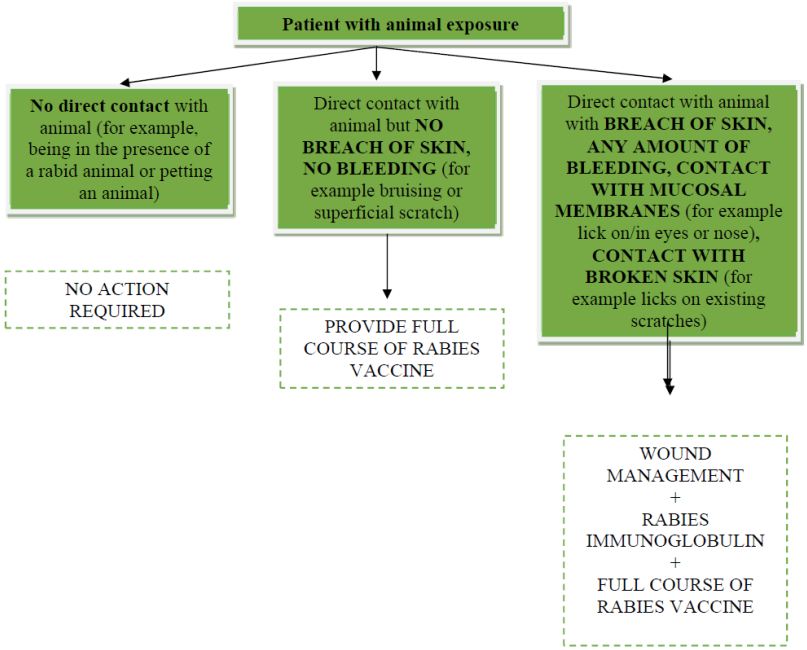



**Figure 1:** Algorithm for rabies PEP for patients with **no history of previous rabies PrEP or PEP.**

**2.2.2 Regimen for rabies vaccine administration**

[26] Kaplan MM et al. Studies on the local treatment of wounds for the prevention of rabies. Bull World Health Organ.1962;26:765–775.

| | |
|---|---|
| • Doses in rabies vaccine regimen:<br>○ Immunocompetent: *not amended* - No change in dosing regimen<br>○ Immunocompromised*: amended* - Dosing regimen amended from a 5- to 4-dose regimen (with individual case management of severely immunocompromised e.g.: symptomatic HIV – to determine if additional dose is required if inadequate seroconversion after vaccination.). | Aligned with WHO Rabies Guidelines April 2018 update[27] that recommends the 4-dose Essen IM regimen to all HIV-infected and other potentially immunocompromised persons who are clinically stable (e.g: HIV-infected on ART with undetectable viral load). Studies[28] [29] [30] [31]have shown an immunogenic response by day 14 (subjects had neutralizing antibody concentrations ≥ 0.5 IU/ml) in the immunocompromised.<br>WHO Guidelines states that clinically well HIV patients on ART reacts to administration of vaccines, similarly to the immunocompetent observed.[32]<br>**Level of Evidence: III Immunogenicity studies, Guidelines** |
| • Directions for IM administration*: not amended*<br>Deltoid muscle in adults, anterolateral thigh in small children (aged < 2 years) | n/a |
| • *Products available on the SA market:* | Currently only one product is available on the market. Alternate SAHPRA-registered product is unavailable due to GMP concerns at the API manufacturer. |
| **2.2.3 Regimen for rabies immunoglobulin (RIG) administration** | |
| • Directions for administration: *amended*<br>Maximum infiltration of RIG in and around the wound with limited benefit from additional IM administration of any remaining RIG at a site distant to the wound. | Systematic review of in vitro and in vivo studies showed that maximum infiltration of the RIG dose (calculated by body weight) into and around the wound is effective; and there is possibly limited benefit of IM administration of the remaining RIG at a site distant to the wound.[33] It is suggested that the remaining RIG could be given to other patients (especially if RIG is in short supply).[34] [35]<br>Data reported from rabies-endemic settings showed > 99% survival rate in the absence of RIG; but with effective wound management and immediate and completeness of course.[36]<br>**Level of Evidence: III Immunogenicity studies, Observational studies** |
| • Time of RIG administration*: not amended*<br>— Recommendation not to administer RIG in previously immunised patients or after day 7 following first rabies vaccine dose, retained.<br>— WHO Guidelines recommend that if there are supply challenges with RIG, allocation should be prioritised[37] (high priority cases include: bat exposure; high risk exposure – multiple bites with breach of skin and mucosa exposure; severe immunodeficiency; animal is a confirmed or probable rabid case). | Aligned with April 2018 WHO Guideline recommendations.<br>**Level of Evidence: III Guidelines** |
| • Equine rabies immunoglobulin: *added*<br>Alternative to HRIG, when there are supply challenges with HRIG, dosed at 40 IU/kg. Anaphylaxis, though rare, can occur and treating healthcare worker should be prepared to manage this ADR (Skin testing before eRIG administration is not recommended as unreliable in predicting adverse effects. | Aligned with April 2018 WHO Guideline recommendations.<br>**Level of Evidence: III Guidelines[38]** |
| **2.3.1 Immunocompromised individuals** | |

[27] World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

[28] Sirikwin S, Likanonsakul S, Waradejwinyoo S, Pattamadilok S, Kumperasart S, Chaovavanich A, Manatsathit S, Malerczyk C, Wasi C. Antibody response to an eight-site intradermal rabies vaccination in patients infected with Human Immunodeficiency Virus. Vaccine. 2009 Jul 9;27(32):4350-4. doi: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.03.027.

[29] Thisyakorn U, Pancharoen C, Wilde H. Immunologic and virologic evaluation of HIV-1-infected children after rabies vaccination. Vaccine. 2001 Jan 8;19(11-12):1534-7.

[30] Sampath G, Parikh S, Sangram P, Briggs DJ. Rabies post-exposure prophylaxis in malnourished children exposed to suspect rabid animals. Vaccine. 2005 Jan 19;23(9):1102-5.

[31] Rahimi P, Vahabpour R, Aghasadeghi MR, Sadat SM, Howaizi N, Mostafavi E, Eslamifar A, Fallahian V. Neutralizing Antibody Response after Intramuscular Purified Vero Cell Rabies Vaccination (PVRV) in Iranian Patients with Specific Medical Conditions. PLoS One. 2015 Oct 6;10(10):e0139171. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0139171. eCollection 2015. Erratum in: PLoS One. 2015;10(10):e0142244.

[32] Simani OE, Izu A, Violari A, Cotton MF, van Niekerk N, Adrian PV, Madhi SA. Effect of HIV-1 exposure and antiretroviral treatment strategies in HIV-infected children on immunogenicity of vaccines during infancy. AIDS. 2014 Feb 20;28(4):531-41. doi: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000127.

[33] Madhusudana SN, Ashwin BY, Sudarshan S. Feasibility of reducing rabies immunoglobulin dosage for passive immunization against rabies: results of In vitro and In vivo studies. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2013 Sep;9(9):1914-7. doi: 10.4161/hv.25431.

[34] Bharti OK et al. Injecting rabies immunoglobulin (RIG) into wounds only: A significant saving of lives and costly RIG. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2017; 13(4):762–765.

[35] Bharti OK et al. Local infiltration of rabies immunoglobulins without systemic intramuscular administration: An alternative cost-effective approach for passive immunization against rabies. Hum Vaccin Immunother. 2016; 12(3):837–842.

[36] WHO. Rabies Working Group Report, SAGE meeting October 2017. Available at http://www.who.int/immunization/sage/meetings/2017/october/1_Background_paper_WG_RABIES_final.pdf?ua=1, accessed February 2018.

[37] WHO. Evidence to recommendation Table 3: prioritization of RIG. Available at http://www.who.int/immunization/policy/position_papers/rabies_prioritization_rig.pdf

[38] World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

| | |
|---|---|
| • PEP dosing regimen: *amended*<br>i. Regimen includes 4-doses of vaccines (days 0,7,14,28)<br>ii. RIG x 1 dose only recommended for the severely immunocompromised (excludes clinically well HIV-infected patients on ART). | See discussion above - 2.2.2 Regimen for rabies vaccine administration. |
| **2.3.2 Pregnant and lactating women** | |
| Safety of rabies vaccine and RIG in pregnancy and breastfeeding noted. | Aligned with April 2018 WHO Guideline recommendations.<br>**Level of Evidence: III Guidelines**[39] |
| **2.3.3 Patients who have received previous PrEP or PEP** | |
| • Rabies vaccine: *dosing not amended*<br>• RIG: *recommendation not to administer RIG retained*<br>— Repeat exposure <3 months after a previous exposure, and had received a complete PEP: only wound treatment is required; vaccine nor RIG is needed.<br>— For repeat exposures occurring >3 months after the last PEP: 2-dose IM rabies vaccine on days 0 and 3 recommended and RIG is not indicated. | Aligned with April 2018 WHO Guideline recommendations.<br>**Level of Evidence: III Guidelines** |
| **2.3.4 Delayed presentation** | |
| • Double dosing of vaccine: *deleted*<br>The following recommendation *"If patient presents after 48 hours, administer double the initial dose on day 0"*,<br>replaced by,<br>*"Rabies PEP should ideally be provided as soon after exposure as possible. When patients, present well after the exposure event, regard the first day of presentation as day 0 for vaccine and RIG administration".* | Aligned with April 2018 WHO Guideline recommendations.<br>**Level of Evidence: III Guidelines** |

**Recommendation:** The Adult Hospital Level Committee recommends that the above-mentioned amendments pertaining to post exposure management be included in the respective STGs.

The STG was updated accordingly – see below (changes only):

**Amended from:**

***2.1 Wound Management***

Wash wound thoroughly with soap under running water for 5–10 minutes.

***2.2.1 Response to different severity of exposure***

| Category | Type of exposure | Management |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | » Touching/feeding of animal.<br>» Licking of intact skin. | » No treatment if history is reliable.<br>» If history not reliable, treat as category 2. |
| 2 | » Nibbling of uncovered skin.<br>» Superficial scratch without bleeding. | » Wound management.<br>» Administer full course vaccine. Only stop if animal tested negative for rabies or is still healthy after 10 days' observation.<br>» Don't give immunoglobulin, except in immunocompromised patients. |
| 3 | » Bites/scratches that penetrate the skin and with any visible blood.<br>» Licking of broken skin or mucous membranes e.g. eyes and mouth.<br>» Bat bites:<br>– Any close contact with a bat: single or multiple bites or scratches and bruising (even with minor bites or unapparent skin penetration).<br>– Direct physical contact with bat saliva or neural tissue; contact of mucous membranes with bat saliva, droppings or urine. | » Wound management.<br>» Administer full course vaccine.<br>» Only stop if animal tested negative for rabies or is still healthy after 10 days' observation.<br>» Administer rabies immunoglobulin.<br>» Administer tetanus vaccine.<br>» Prescribe antibiotics. |

***2.2.2 Regimen for rabies vaccine administration***

**Rabies vaccination**

Only indicated for category 2 and 3 exposure. Available from the nearest district hospital.

Children

- Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM anterolateral thigh.
  - Day 0 – single dose
  - Day 3 – single dose

**Amended to:**

***2.1 Wound Management***

Wash wound thoroughly with soap under running water for 15 minutes.

***2.2.1 Response to different severity of exposure***

| PATIENT WITH ANIMAL EXPOSURE | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ***Severity of exposure*** | **No direct contact** with animal (for example, being in the presence of a rabid animal or petting an animal) | Direct contact with animal but **no breach of skin, no bleeding** (for example bruising or superficial scratch) | Direct contact with animal with **breach of skin, any amount of bleeding, contact with mucosal membranes** (for example lick on/in eyes or nose), **contact with broken skin** (for example licks on existing scratches), **any contact with a bat.** |
| ***Management based on severity of the exposure*** | Washing of exposed skin surfaces | Wound management<br>***AND***<br>Full course of rabies vaccine<br>(Rabies immunoglobulin, only if severely immuno-compromised) | Wound management<br>***AND***<br>Rabies immunoglobulin<br>***AND***<br>Full course of rabies vaccine |

***2.2.2 Regimen for rabies vaccine administration***

**Rabies vaccination**

Only indicated for direct animal contact.

Patients who have previously been fully immunised or who received PEP more than 3 months ago need only two doses: on Day 0 and Day 3.

Patients who have received previous PEP or PrEP within the previous 3 months do not require vaccination against rabies. Only wound treatment is required.

[39] World Health Organisation. Rabies vaccines: WHO position paper – April 2018. Weekly epidemiological record: No 16, 2018, 93, 201–220. http://www.who.int/wer

| | |
|---|---|
| Day 7 – single dose<br>Day 14 – single dose<br>Day 28 – single dose(only if immunocompromised).<br><br><u>Adults</u><br>• Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM deltoid.<br>Day 0 – single dose<br>Day 3 – single dose<br>Day 7 – single dose<br>Day 14 – single dose<br>Day 28 – single dose(only if immunocompromised). | Available from the nearest district hospital.<br><br><u>Children</u><br>• Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM anterolateral thigh.<br>Day 0 – single dose<br>Day 3 – single dose<br>Day 7 – single dose<br>Between day 14-28 – single dose<br><br><u>Adults</u><br>• Rabies vaccine, 1 amp, IM deltoid.<br>Day 0 – single dose<br>Day 3 – single dose<br>Day 7 – single dose<br>Between day 14-28 – single dose |
| ***2.2.3 Regimen for rabies immunoglobulin (RIG) administration*** | |
| **Rabies immunoglobulin:**<br>Only indicated for:<br>– Category 3, immunocompetent patients.<br>– Category 2 and 3 immunocompromised patients.<br>– All bat exposures.<br>Available from the nearest district hospital.<br>If not immediately available, source and give as soon as possible.<br>• Rabies immunoglobulin 20 IU/kg.<br>Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound and inject the rest IM (not buttock, unless the wound is on the buttock).<br>Follow with a complete course of vaccine. | **Rabies immunoglobulin (RIG):**<br>○ Only indicated for:<br>– Direct animal contact with breach of skin/ bleeding/ mucosal contact,, immunocompetent patients<br>– Any direct animal contact, immunocompromised patients<br>– All bat exposures<br>○ Patients who have received PEP or PrEP do not require RIG. Only wound treatment is required.<br>○ Available from the nearest district hospital.<br>○ If not immediately available, source and give as soon as possible.<br>○ When 7 days have lapsed since the initial rabies vaccination, RIG is no longer indicated as the vaccine induced immune response will be effective at that time.<br>○ Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound.<br>○ It is **no longer** recommended to inject the remainder of the calculated RIG dose at a site distant to the wound.<br>○ In the case of smaller wounds/areas where it is not possible to infiltrate the entire calculated dose, infiltrate as much as is anatomically feasible in and around the wound site/s without causing compartment syndrome.<br>○ In case of large and multiple wounds, RIG can be diluted with sodium chloride 0.9% solution if necessary to ensure infiltration of all wounds.<br>○ Follow with a complete course of vaccine.<br><br>• Human-derived rabies immunoglobulin (HRIG), IM 20 IU/kg. Infiltrate as much as possible in and around the wound.<br>**OR**<br>• Equine-derived rabies Immunoglobulin (ERIG), IM 40 IU/kg.<br>○ Only administer ERIG in facilities where anaphylaxis or adverse reactions can be managed (Refer to Section 21.2.10).<br><br>**Table 21.7:** Summary of regimen for HRIG and ERIG<br><table><tr><th>Product name</th><th>Max. dose</th><th>Description</th><th>Site of administration</th><th>Schedule</th></tr><tr><td colspan="3">HRIG</td><td rowspan="4">Infiltrate up to the maximum calculated dose in and around the wound site/s.<br><br>For smaller wounds where it is not possible to infiltrate all of the calculated dose, infiltrate as much as is anatomically feasible in and around the wound site/s.</td><td rowspan="4">On day 0 (when patient presents for first time)/ as soon as possible after exposure to be effective to neutralise virus.<br>When RIG is not available it should be sourced as a matter of urgency.<br>When 7 days have lapsed since initial rabies vaccination, RIG is no longer indicated.</td></tr><tr><td>Rabigam®</td><td>20 IU/kg</td><td>150 IU/mL (Supplied in 2 mL vial)</td></tr><tr><td>KamRAB®</td><td>20 IU/kg</td><td>150 IU/mL<br><br>(Supplied in 2, 5 and 10 mL vials).</td></tr><tr><td colspan="3">ERIG</td></tr><tr><td>Equirab®</td><td>40 IU/kg</td><td>200 IU/mL (Supplied in 5 mL vial).</td><td></td><td></td></tr></table>*Source: NICD updated human rabies prophylaxis guideline. www.nicd.ac.za* |
| ***2.3.1 Immunocompromised individuals*** | |
| n/a | Individuals with documented immunodeficiency, such as symptomatic HIV infection, patients with cancer on chemotherapy/radiotherapy, and patients on long-term corticosteroids dosed at 20mg/day for ≥2 weeks, should be evaluated on a case-by-case basis and receive a complete course of PEP including RIG and 4 doses of rabies vaccine in all exposures with direct animal contact.<br>Note: HIV-infected individuals receiving ART who are clinically monitored and well managed are not considered immunocompromised. Such patients have been shown to respond normally to rabies vaccines. |
| ***2.3.3 Patients who have received previous PrEP or PEP*** | |
| n/a | Patients who have received PEP or PrEP do not require RIG. Only wound treatment is required. |

| | |
|---|---|

Antibiotic treatment in children - Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid: *Retained*
Dosing guidance on the use of amoxicillin/clavulanate as an 8 hourly regimen has been retained. The 14:1 amoxicillin/calvulanate BD suspension that is currently on tender is not registered for use for animal or human bites. The dose of clavulanate may not be sufficient to provide adequate anaerobe cover that is usually required for bites. The guidance will be reviewed once a more suitable BD suspension formulation is available on tender.

**21.3.1.2 HUMAN BITES**

Antibiotic treatment in children - Amoxicillin/clavulanic acid: *Retained*
See Section 21.3.1.1 animal bites above.

**21.3.1.3 INSECT STINGS, SCORPION STINGS AND SPIDER BITES**

Description: *editorial amendment*
Chlorphenamine, oral: *indication amended*
Chlorpheniramine, oral: *caution amended*
Paracetamol – dosing guidance: *amended*
The dose guidance for the use of paracetamol has been aligned to the PHC and AH Pain chapters.

**Spiders and scorpions**
An editorial amendment to the STG was proposed and supported as follows: 'Most are non-venomous or mildly venomous, but some may be extremely venomous resulting in neurotoxicity and constitute a medical emergency.'

The STG text was editorially amended accordingly for clarity purposes with specific guidance that oral antihistamines should only be used if there is severe itching. The caution against use in children less than 2 years of age was deleted to align with SAMF recommendations[40] and the updated PHC Chp 5 Skin (refer to NEMLC report 2020-23 Section 5.2). Updated STG text for medicine treatment follows on below:

**Emergency treatment:**
Treat anaphylaxis (bee/wasp stings). See Section 21.2.10: Anaphylaxis.
**Local symptoms:**
- Calamine lotion, apply when needed.

**If severe itch:**
Children
- Chlorphenamine, oral, 0.1 mg/kg/dose 6–8 hourly. See dosing table, pg 23.3.

**~~CAUTION~~**
~~Do not give an antihistamine to children < 2 years of age~~.

Adults
- Chlorphenamine, oral, 4 mg, 6–8 hourly.

**AND**
If there is a wide local response to insect bite with inflamed lesion, see Section 5.10.4: Papular urticaria.
**Pain:**
Children
- Paracetamol, oral, 10–15 mg/kg/dose 6 hourly when required. See dosing table, pg 23.8.

Adults
- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours).
  - Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

**Very painful scorpion stings:**
- Lidocaine 2%, 2 mL injected around the bite as a local anaesthetic.
  - Local application of ice, if tolerated.

**Cytotoxic lesions:**
Avoid giving prophylactic antibiotics for bites and stings.
If secondary skin infection (site red, swollen, hot, tender, pus may be present), manage as cellulitis. See Section 5.4.3: Cellulitis.
**Spider bites and scorpion stings:**
Tetanus prophylaxis (Z23.5)
If not immunised within the last 5 years:
- Tetanus toxoid vaccine (TT), IM, 0.5 mL.

[40] South African Medicines Formulary 14th Ed.

Contact information: *Added*
Contact information added as for snakebites as tabulated below:

For guidance on the identification and clinical management of snake/spider/scorpion bites, contact:
**Poisons Information Helpline:** 0861555777

For procurement of snake/spider/scorpion antivenom, contact:
**South African Vaccine Producers (SAVP):**
Telephone (011) 386 6062/6063/6078 (Office hours only) or
Email: Benita.mouton@nhls.ac.za
In the rare event that antivenom needs to be released/procured afterhours:
Tel 071 680 9897

**21.3.1.4 SNAKEBITES**

**Venom in the eyes**
Local anaesthetic, ophthalmic drops: *added as a therapeutic class*
Tetracaine 1%, ophthalmic drops: *retained as an example of class in the STG*
Oxybuprocaine 0.4%, ophthalmic drops: *added to the TI database as an example of class*
Aligned with the section 18.8: Surgical and diagnostic products of chapter 8: Eye conditions of the Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML, 2019 edition.

**Antivenom**
Antivenom: *criteria for administration amended*
The following STG text was accepted for deletion for correctness:

~~All patients with systemic signs and symptoms or severe spreading local tissue damage should receive antivenom.~~

Contact information: *Updated*
Contact information updated as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

**South African Vaccine Producers (SAVP):**
Office hours: (011) 386 6062/6063/6078
After hours: (011) 386 6000 or 071 680 9897

**Amended to:**

For guidance on the identification and clinical management of snake/spider/scorpion bites, contact:
**Poisons Information Helpline:** 0861555777

For procurement of snake/spider/scorpion antivenom, contact:
**South African Vaccine Producers (SAVP):**
Telephone (011) 386 6062/6063/6078 (Office hours only) or
Email: Benita.mouton@nhls.ac.za
In the rare event that antivenom needs to be released/procured afterhours:
Tel 071 680 9897

**21.3.2 BURNS**

**Pain**
Paracetamol dosing – adults: *Amended*
The dose guidance for the use of paracetamol in adults has been aligned to the PHC and AH Pain chapters as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 1 g 4–6 hourly when required.
  Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

Maximum dose: 4 g in 24 hours

**Amended to:**

Adults

- Paracetamol, oral, 500mg -1 g 4–6 hourly when required (to a maximum of 4 g in 24 hours).
  Maximum dose: 15 mg/kg/dose.

**Septic burns**

Povidone iodine, topical: *retained*
Silver sulfadiazine, topical: *not added*
Mupirocin, topical: *not added*
Nano-crystalline dressings: *not added*
Melaleuca alternifolia, topical: *not added*

Refer to scoping review on the Knowledge Hub or included below for further detail.

| **PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITTEE RECOMMENDATION:** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Type of recommendation** | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
| | | **X** | | | |
| **Recommendation:** Current standard of care in the STG to be retained – topical povidone iodine for infected burns.<br>*Rationale:* No new evidence could be identified for alternative treatment options for septic burns.<br>**Level of Evidence:** Low to very low certainty<br>**Review indicator:** New evidence sufficient to change the recommendation | | | | | |
| **NEMLC RECOMMENDATION (MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022):**<br>NEMLC accepted the review and proposed recommendation, but recommended that the PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee consider reviewing other dressings for wounds, noting that this topic would be prioritised in the topic prioritisation project plan and may be reviewed in the next review cycle. Furthermore, it was noted that wound dressings are not funded from the Provincial Pharmaceutical budgets. | | | | | |
| **Monitoring and evaluation considerations** | | | | | |
| **Research priorities** | | | | | |

Referral – rehabilitation services: *Added*
In response to the request from RuRehab, the following statement has been added to the list of referral criteria:
*"Consider rehabilitation services for reducing the risk of contractures and disfigurement."*

## 21.3.3 EXPOSURE TO POISONOUS SUBSTANCES

**Tricyclic poisoning**

Sodium bicarbonate, parenteral: *not added*
The proposal to add guidance for tricyclic poisoning to the PHC STGs was not accepted as sodium bicarbonate is not listed on the PHC EML.
**Level of Evidence: Expert opinion**

**Organophosphate and carbamate poisoning – atropinisation:** *indication amended*
Atropinisation in this clinical setting should probably only be assessed by monitoring secretions in the chest with improvement of oxygenation. The STG text was amended, accordingly:

| |
|---|
| Reassess after 3–5 minutes for evidence of atropinisation as indicated by reduced bronchial secretions, ~~dry skin, increasing heart rate and blood pressure, and dilating pupils (note: pupil dilatation may be delayed)~~ improvement of oxygenation and decreased oxygen requirements. |

**Level of Evidence: Expert opinion**

Atropine, IV: *directions for use not amended*
The proposal to include atropine infusion after atropinisation was not accepted for primary level of care. It was considered to be impractical to continuously administer large quantities of 80 x 0.5 mg atropine ampoules at primary level of care. However, it was reported that the emergency fraternity is currently querying the availability of IV atropine with SAHPRA.
**Recommendation:** Retain bolus dosing of atropine in the PHC STG, until such time that a SAHPRA-registered product is available for IV administration of atropine. However, IV infusion of atropine could be considered for inclusion in the Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML.
**Level of Evidence: Expert opinion**

**Opioid overdose**
Naloxone, IV: *directions for use amended*
Dosing of naloxone in children was simplified and aligned with the Paediatric Hospital Level STG and expert opinion. Sivilotti (2016)[41] mentions that naloxone for the reversal of respiratory depression, after adequate management of airway and breathing, should be used early in the resuscitation algorithm.
**Level of Evidence: Expert opinion**

**Amended from:**

- Naloxone, IV (preferable) or IM

| Age and weight | Initial dose (IV/IM) | **Repeat dose:** Reassess every 2 minutes. If breathing still inadequate, give further naloxone every 2–3 minutes. |
|---|---|---|
| **Children:** | | |
| < 5 years or ≤ 20 kg | – 0.1 mg/kg immediately (maximum 2 mg/dose) | Repeat 0.1mg/kg (maximum 2 mg/dose), up to total dose of 10 mg. |
| ≥ 5 years or > 20 kg | – 0.4–2mg immediately | Repeat 0.1mg/kg (maximum 2mg/dose), up to total dose of 10 mg |
| **Adults:** | | |
| Adults | – 0.4–2 mg immediately | Double the dose each time (e.g.: 0.8mg, 2mg, 4 mg), up to total dose of 10 mg. |

  - Naloxone has a short duration of action (45 minutes) - continue to monitor closely as further doses of naloxone may be needed while awaiting and during transport.
  - In patients addicted to opioids, naloxone may precipitate an acute withdrawal syndrome after several hours. This must not prevent the use of naloxone.
  - Refer all patients

**Amended to:**

- Naloxone, IV (preferable) or IM

| | Initial dose (IV/IM) | **Repeat dose:** Reassess every 2 minutes. If breathing still inadequate, give further naloxone every 2–3 minutes. |
|---|---|---|
| **Children** | – 0.1 mg/kg immediately | Repeat 0.1 mg/kg (maximum 2 mg/dose), up to total dose of 10 mg. |
| **Adults** | – 0.4 mg immediately | Double the dose each time (e.g.: 0.8 mg, 2 mg, 4 mg), up to total dose of 10 mg. |

  - Naloxone has a short duration of action (45 minutes) - continue to monitor closely as further doses of naloxone may be needed while awaiting and during transport.
  - In patients addicted to opioids, naloxone may precipitate an acute withdrawal syndrome after several hours. This must not prevent the use of naloxone.
  - Refer all patients.

[41] Sivilotti ML. Flumazenil, naloxone and the 'coma cocktail'. Br J Clin Pharmacol. 2016 Mar;81(3):428-36. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/26469689/

**Paracetamol poisoning**

N-acetylcysteine, oral: *dose not amended*

Oral dose of N-acetylcysteine was confirmed to be correct - NEMLC-approved in the previous review cycle of the Adult Hospital Level STGs and EML, 2019 – see NEMLC report below:

***NEMLC report for the Adult Hospital Level Emergencies and injuries chapter (2017-9 review cycle):***

*N-acetylcysteine, oral: retained and dosing regimen added*

*Where parenteral formulation is unavailable, oral NAC recommended as a safe alternative where IV administration is not an option. Previous recommendation of oral NAC if IV formulation is unavailable has been expanded to include a dosing regimen, as follows:*

*If N-acetylcysteine, IV is unavailable:*

- *N-acetylcysteine, oral, 140 mg/kg, followed by 70 mg/kg 4 hourly for seventeen doses.*

**Note:** Avoid giving activated charcoal if giving N-acetylcysteine orally as it will reduce the systemic absorption and thus negate the effect of oral N-acetylcysteine.

**Level of Evidence: III Observational studies**[42] [43] [44]

**Recommendation:** Guidance for oral NAC to be updated in the PHC STGs and EML.

**Toxic alcohol (ethylene glycol and methanol) poisoning**

Ethanol: *loading doses not added*

Guidance for alcohol and toxic alcohol poisoning was not considered appropriate for inclusion in the Primary Healthcare STG as management is complex and not pragmatic for primary level of care. However, a cross-referral could be made to the Adult hospital Level STGs and EML.

## 21.3.6.1 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, OCCUPATIONAL

**PEP for healthcare workers following hepatitis B exposure**

Hepatitis B Immunoglobulin: *amended*

Aligned with the National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020[45] - STG text was updated as follows:

| | Source patient | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Vaccination status** | **HBsAg positive** | **HbsAg negative** | **HBsAg unknown** |
| Vaccination status and antibody response status of HCW | Unvaccinated or vaccination incomplete | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Hep B vaccine (3 doses at monthly intervals) | • Initiate Hep B vaccination (month 0, 1 and 6) | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• Hep B vaccine (3 doses at monthly intervals) |
| | Vaccinated **AND** known to have HBsAb >10 units/mL# | No treatment | No treatment | No treatment |
| | Vaccinated **AND** HBsAb <10 units/mL or level unknown | • HBIG, IM, 500 units *<br>• If HBIG <10 units/mL, repeat HBIG at 1 month<br>• Repeat Hep B vaccine (3 doses at monthly intervals) | No treatment | • HBIG, IM, 500 units*<br>• If HBIG <10 units/mL, repeat HBIG at 1 month<br>• Repeat Hep B vaccine (3 doses at monthly intervals) |

**Delay in obtaining HBsAb results**

Time period of delay: *amended*

Aligned with the National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020[46]- STG text was updated as follows:

[42] Yarema MC, Johnson DW, Berlin RJ, Sivilotti ML, Nettel-Aguirre A, Brant RF, Spyker DA, Bailey B, Chalut D, Lee JS, Plint AC, Purssell RA, Rutledge T, Seviour CA, Stiell IG, Thompson M, Tyberg J, Dart RC, Rumack BH. Comparison of the 20-hour intravenous and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine protocols for the treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. Ann Emerg Med. 2009 Oct;54(4):606-14. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19556028

[43] Williamson K, Wahl MS, Mycyk MB. Direct comparison of 20-hour IV, 36-hour oral, and 72-hour oral acetylcysteine for treatment of acute acetaminophen poisoning. Am J Ther. 2013 Jan;20(1):37-40. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23299230

[44] Rumack and Bateman. Acetaminophen and acetylcysteine dose and duration: past, present and future. Clin Toxicol (Phila) 2012;50(2):91-98. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22320209

[45] National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

[46] National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

If the delay in obtaining HBsAb results is more than ~~24 hours~~ 7 days initiate treatment as for vaccinated AND HBsAb < 10 units/mL.

### 21.3.6 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS

### 21.3.6.1 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, OCCUPATIONAL

General measures: *Editorial amendment*

An editorial amendment was made as follows for improved clarity:

Where the source patient is on ARVs or has been on ARVs, initiate prophylaxis and seek expert opinion. An extra blood sample (unclotted, EDTA) of the source patient should be stored in case of need for further ~~viral~~ resistance testing.

Adverse effects of PEP: *Guidance amended*

Guidance on when consultation with a virologist or infectious disease specialist is recommended, has been amended as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

**Note:** Adverse effects of PEP:

» PEP is generally not well tolerated. Adverse effects occur in about half of cases and therapy is discontinued in about a third. Efavirenz is not recommended as it is very poorly tolerated in PEP.

TDF is contra-indicated in renal disease or with concomitant use of nephrotoxic medicines, e.g. aminoglycosides (check baseline creatinine clearance). Where TDF is contraindicated, switch to AZT. If AZT is not tolerated, consult or refer for further management.

» Zidovudine often causes nausea and headache and so should only be given if TDF is contraindicated.

If dolutegravir is not tolerated, give ATV/r as the first choice protease inhibitor as LPV/r frequently causes gastrointestinal side effects. ATV/r may commonly cause jaundice (i.e. unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia without hepatitis) which is harmless.

When the source patient is known to be on a failing ART regimen, modify the PEP regimen

- If the patient is on AZT or stavudine then TDF should be used.
- If the patient is on TDF then AZT should be used.
- If the patient is on efavirenz or nevirapine then ATV/r or LPV/r should be used.

Patients on a failing second line ART regimen almost always have no resistance to protease inhibitors, so ATV/r or LPV/r should still be effective.

Consultation with a virologist or infectious diseases physician is recommended for advice on which antiretroviral medicines to use for PEP.

**Amended to:**

**Note:** Adverse effects of PEP:

» PEP is generally not well tolerated. Adverse effects occur in about half of cases and therapy is discontinued in about a third. Efavirenz is not recommended as it is very poorly tolerated in PEP.

» TDF is contra-indicated in renal disease or with concomitant use of nephrotoxic medicines, e.g. aminoglycosides (check baseline creatinine clearance). Where TDF is contraindicated, switch to AZT. If AZT is not tolerated, consult or refer for further management.

» Zidovudine often causes nausea and headache and so should only be given if TDF is contraindicated.

» If dolutegravir is not tolerated, give ATV/r as the first choice protease inhibitor as LPV/r frequently causes gastrointestinal side effects. ATV/r may commonly cause jaundice (i.e. unconjugated hyperbilirubinaemia without hepatitis) which is harmless.

» If the source patient is known to be on a failing ART regimen, modification of the PEP regimen may be required. Consultation with a virologist or infectious diseases physician is recommended for advice on which antiretroviral medicines to use for PEP

» If the patient is on AZT or stavudine then TDF should be used.

» Patients on a failing second line ART regimen almost always have no resistance to protease inhibitors, so ATV/r or LPV/r should still be effective.

**21.3.6.2 POST EXPOSURE PROPHYLAXIS, RAPE AND SEXUAL ASSAULT**

HIV PEP – guidance for children: *Amended*

Guidance on the use of PEP in children has been amended to include a dolutegravir based regimen in line with the South African HIV Clinicians Society Guidelines for PEP[47] as tabulated below:

**Amended from:**

Children

- Zidovudine (AZT), oral, 12 hourly for 28 days.
  Paediatric dose: 180–240 mg/m2. See dosing table, pg 23.9.
  Maximum: 300 mg/dose.

**AND**

- Lamivudine (3TC), oral, 4 mg/kg 12 hourly or 8mg/kg daily for 28 days.
  Maximum: 150 mg/dose if given 12 hourly or 300 mg/dose if given daily. See dosing table, pg 23.6.

**AND**

- Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r), oral 12 hourly for 28 days.
  Paediatric dose: 300/75mg/m2. See dosing table, pg 23.7.
  Maximum: 400/100 mg/dose.

Dosages may vary by±1 mg/kg/dose, to allow a convenient volume of medication.
Use the adult dosage regimen if children require more than the maximum dose.
Follow-up visits should be at 2 weeks, 6 weeks, and 4 months after the rape.

Adults

Management for HIV prevention is the same as for occupational HIV exposure. See section 21.3.6.1 Post-exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

**Amended to:**

Children <10 years and < 30kg

- Zidovudine (AZT), oral, 12 hourly for 28 days.
  Paediatric dose: 180–240 mg/m2. See Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.
  Maximum: 300 mg/dose.

**AND**

- Lamivudine (3TC), oral, 4 mg/kg 12 hourly or 8mg/kg daily for 28 days.
  Maximum: 150 mg/dose if given 12 hourly or 300 mg/dose if given daily. See Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.

**AND**

- Dolutegravir (DTG), oral, for 28 days.
  For dosing guidance, see Section 23: Standard Paediatric dosing tables.

Dosages may vary by±1 mg/kg/dose, to allow a convenient volume of medication.
Use the adult dosage regimen if children require more than the maximum dose.
Follow-up visits should be at 2 weeks, 6 weeks, and 4 months after the rape.

Adults and children ≥ 10 years and ≥ 30 kg

Management for HIV prevention is the same as for occupational HIV exposure. See section 21.3.6.1 Post-exposure prophylaxis, occupational.

HIV PrEP: *added as a cross reference to the PHC STGs and EML*

For patients at ongoing high risk of HIV acquisition, guidance was provided to transition from PEP to PrEP as follows:

**HIV PrEP**

If patient is at ongoing high risk of HIV acquisition, commence PrEP after PEP has been completed.
Perform HIV test 4-weeks after initiating PrEP.

[47] Horak J, Venter WDF, Wattrus C, Papavarnavas N, Howell P, Sorour G, Wallis C, Gill K, Conradie F, Bekker LG. Southern African HIV Clinicians Society 2023 Guideline for post-exposure prophylaxis: Updated recommendations. South Afr J HIV Med. 2023 Sep 28;24(1):1522. doi: 10.4102/sajhivmed.v24i1.1522. PMID: 37795431; PMCID: PMC10546897.

**Emergency contraception**
Copper IUCD: *added (as first line option)*
Levonorgestrel, oral: *retained (as 2nd line option)*

Copper IUCD placed as the first line option as this agent has less drug-drug interactions compared to oral levonorgestrel 1.5mg and is the agent of choice for obese women. Copper IUCD can also be used as a long-acting reversible contraceptive.[48] [49]

**Emergency contraception for obese women**
Levonorgestrel, oral: *dose not amended*
An external comment was received that there is no need to double the dose of levonorgestrel for obese women for emergency contraception. Limited data suggests that obese women have an increased risk of pregnancy after use of levonorgestrel and ulipristal acetate emergency contraception compared to those who are not obese.[50] In a pharmacokinetic study with 10 participants, levonorgestrol Cmax in obese participants was half that achieved in participants with normal BMI, and doubling the levonorgestrol dose in obese participants resulted in a similar Cmax to that seen in those with normal BMI[51]. Faculty of Sexual & Reproductive Healthcare (FSRH) Overweight, Obesity and Contraception Guidelines of April 2019, therefore recommends "double-dose (3 mg) of levonorgestrel emergency contraception, if BMI >26 kg/m2 or weight >70 kg". However, the effectiveness of double-dosing in preventing pregnancy is unknown.[52] In a randomised pharmacodynamic study with 70 obese participants, doubling the levonorgestrol dose did not result in improved inhibition of ovulation: proportion of women with no follicle rupture within 5 days of levonorgestrol administration was similar with standard and double dosing.[53] This suggests that doubling the dose may not be sufficient to improve the efficacy of oral levonorgestrol in obese women, although this study did not directly explore the effect of double dosing on subsequent rates of pregnancy. Therefore, until new evidence emerges the recommendation of double-dosing of levonorgestrel amongst obese/overweight women will be retained, aligned with Guidelines. Available evidence also suggests that the effectiveness of the copper IUCD is not affected by body weight or BMI. The copper IUCD is therefore the preferred method for emergency contraception in the obese.[54]
**Level of Evidence: Guidelines**

The caution box in the STG was amended as follows:

| **CAUTION** |
| --- |
| Emergency contraceptive tablets must be taken as soon as possible, preferably within 72 hours of unprotected intercourse, and not later than 5 days. |
| Enzyme inducers (including efavirenz and carbamazepine) cause a significant reduction in levonorgestrel concentrations. |
| Women on these medicines should preferably have copper IUCD inserted **or** alternatively double the dose of levonorgestrel. |
| Women > 80 kg or BMI ≥ 30 should also preferably have copper IUCD inserted **or** alternatively double the dose of levonorgestrel. |

**STI prophylaxis for pregnant women**
Ceftriaxone, IM: *retained*
Azithromycin, oral: *retained*
Metronidazole, oral: *retained*
Cefixime, oral: *not added*

[48] FSRH Guideline (April 2019) Overweight, Obesity and Contraception. BMJ Sex Reprod Health. 2019 Apr;45(Suppl 2):1-69. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31053605/
[49] Turok DK, Jacobson JC, Dermish AI, Simonsen SE, Gurtcheff S, McFadden M, Murphy PA. Emergency contraception with a copper IUD or oral levonorgestrel: an observational study of 1-year pregnancy rates. Contraception. 2014 Mar;89(3):222-8. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24332433/
[50] Jatlaoui TC and Curtis KM. Safety and effectiveness data for emergency contraceptive pills among women with obesity: a systematic review. Contraception 94 (2016) 605–611. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27234874
[51] Edelman AB, Cherala G, Blue SW, Erikson DW, Jensen JT. Impact of obesity on the pharmacokinetics of levonorgestrel-based emergency contraception: single and double dosing. Contraception. 2016 Jul;94(1):52-7. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27000996/
[52] FSRH Guideline (April 2019) Overweight, Obesity and Contraception. BMJ Sex Reprod Health. 2019 Apr;45(Suppl 2):1-69. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/31053605/
[53] Edelman, Alison B. MD, MPH; Hennebold, Jon D. PhD; Bond, Kise PSM; Lim, Jeong Y. PhD; Cherala, Ganesh PhD; Archer, David F. MD; Jensen, Jeffrey T. MD, MPH Double Dosing Levonorgestrel-Based Emergency Contraception for Individuals With Obesity, Obstetrics & Gynecology: June 9, 2022 - Volume - Issue - 10.1097/AOG.0000000000004717 doi: 10.1097/AOG.0000000000004717
[54] Turok DK, Jacobson JC, Dermish AI, Simonsen SE, Gurtcheff S, McFadden M, Murphy PA. Emergency contraception with a copper IUD or oral levonorgestrel: an observational study of 1-year pregnancy rates. Contraception. 2014 Mar;89(3):222-8. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/24332433/

Erythromycin, oral: *not added*
Spectinomycin, parenteral: *not added*

STI prophylaxis for pregnant women is the same as for non-pregnant women, aligned with the PHC STI chapter, Section 12.1.2: Sexually active women. It is noted that the NDoH PEP Guidelines[55] has outdated recommendations (cefixime, erythromycin and spectinomycin) which will be communicated to the relevant NDoH Program.

### 21.3.7 SOFT TISSUE INJURIES

Paracetamol dosing – adults: *Amended*
The dose guidance for the use of paracetamol has been aligned to the PHC and AH Pain chapters and as detailed under Section 21.3.2 burn above.

Referral for patients with haemophilia: *Not added*
External comment received from RuRehab to refer persons with haemophilia for rehabilitation was not supported as these patients are usually under the care of specialised haemophilia centres with responsibility for directing further referrals accordingly. EML guidance of the management of haemophilia is included in the AH Chp 2: BBFO.

### 21.3.8 SPRAINS AND STRAINS

Paracetamol dosing – adults: *Amended*
The dose guidance for the use of paracetamol has been aligned to the PHC and AH Pain chapters and as detailed under Section 21.3.2 burn above.

Referral – rehabilitation services: *Added*
In response to the request from RuRehab, the following statement has been added to the list of referral criteria: *"Consider rehabilitation services for sprains, strains, and overuse injuries to improve joint stability and assist with pain management."*

[55] National Department of Health. National Clinical Guidelines of post-exposure prophylaxis (PEP) in occupational and non-occupational exposures, December 2020. https://www.knowledgehub.org.za/elibrary/national-clinical-guidelines-post-exposure-prophylaxis-pep-occupational-and-non

**South African National Essential Medicine List**
**Primary Healthcare/ Adult Hospital Level of Care Medication Review Process**
**Component: Emergencies and injuries**

## MEDICINE REVIEW

### 1. Executive Summary

**Date:** 18 August 2022
**Medicine (INN):** Olanzapine (IM, orodispersible)
**Medicine (ATC):** N05AH03
**Indication (ICD10 code):** Delirium F05.0/.1/.8/.9
**Patient population:** Adults with delirium who are agitated or considered a risk to themselves or others, and non-pharmacological measures are ineffective.
**Prevalence of condition:**
South African studies
- 12.3% of acute medical inpatients (Du Plooy, 2020)[1]
- 17.6% of acutely admitted people with HIV (Day, 2021)[2]

International studies
- Approximately 20% of general adult inpatients and 80% of mechanically ventilated patients in ICU (Nikooie, 2019)[3]

**Level of Care:** Primary Healthcare
**Prescriber Level:** Doctor prescribed
**Motivator/reviewer name(s):** Lesley Robertson, Shelley McGee, Tamara Kredo, Natasha Gloeck, Mashudu Mthethwa, Trudy Leong
**PTC affiliation:** Lesley Robertson affiliated to Sedibeng District PTC, Gauteng

### Key findings

- We conducted a review of Clinical practice guidelines, health technology assessments, systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials (RCTs), RCTs and where necessary systematic reviews of non-randomised/ observational studies or observational studies. Ongoing trials were also sought.
- Two systematic reviews, three RCTS and three clinical guidelines were identified, including comparisons of interest.
- All three clinical guidelines were of relatively high quality assessed against AGREE II. Only one makes a weak recommendation for olanzapine for the treatment of delirium
- Comparison of olanzapine to placebo, was reported in one clinical trial, which rated poor in terms of quality, as part of a systematic review. The impact of olanzapine on duration of delirium (days) was uncertain (MD=-2.4, 95% CI 3.51,-1.29, n = 103, 1 trial. Change in delirium severity, appeared to favour olanzapine (reduction in the delirium rating scale (DRS) MD = -11.1, 95% CI 15.51 to -7.69, n=103, 1 trial.
- For comparison of olanzapine versus haloperidol, change in delirium severity results were reported in most studies however these were at different time points and using different measures. Overall, there was no difference in delirium severity between olanzapine and haloperidol (generally very low to low certainty of evidence). Duration of delirium (days) did not differ significantly between haloperidol and olanzapine, in 1 trial, included in a systematic review (mean Difference (MD) 0.62 days, 95% CI 0.06 to 1.18).
- No reviews nor trials were identified comparing olanzapine to benzodiazepines in the treatment of delirium.

**PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITEE RECOMMENDATION:**

| | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Type of recommendation | | | | X | |

**Recommendation:** The PHC/ Adult Hospital Level Committee suggests using olanzapine (orodispersible and parenteral formulations) as an option to manage delirium where non-pharmacological management is not sufficient and if haloperidol, intramuscular formulation is unavailable
*Rationale:* Available low-quality evidence shows that olanzapine is comparable to haloperidol.
**Level of Evidence: Low to very low certainty evidence**

| |
|---|
| **Review indicator:** Evidence of harm, efficacy |
| **NEMLC RECOMMENDATION (20 OCTOBER 2022 MEETING):** NEMLC recommended the use of olanzapine oro-dispersible tablet or IM injection for delirium with agitated and acutely disturbed behaviour. Once the patient is able to swallow, to continue with oral haloperidol or olanzapine, until behaviour is contained. |
| **Monitoring and evaluation considerations** |
| **Research priorities** |

2. **Name of author(s)/motivator(s)**
   Lesley Robertson, Tamara Kredo, Mashudu Mthethwa, Natasha Gloeck, Shelley McGee, Trudy Leong

3. **Author affiliation and conflict of interest details**
   - Lesley Robertson, Department of Psychiatry, University of the Witwatersrand: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine
   - Tamara Kredo, Cochrane South Africa, South African Medical Research Council; Division of Clinical Pharmacology, Department of Medicine, and Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, department of Global Health, Stellenbosch University: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine
   - Mashudu Mthethwa, Cochrane South Africa, South African Medical Research Council: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine
   - Natasha Gloeck, Cochrane South Africa, South African Medical Research Council: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine
   - Shelley McGee, Ophthalmological Society of South Africa: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine
   - Trudy Leong, Right-To-Care as Secretariat-support to PHC/ Adult Hospital Level Committee of the National Essential Medicines List, NDoH: no conflicts of interest related to olanzapine

4. **Introduction/ Background**
   The *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition* (DSM-5)[4] describes delirium as an acute disturbance in attention, awareness (reduced orientation to the environment), and cognition (e.g., memory deficit, disorientation, language, visuospatial ability, or perception). It develops within hours to days and tends to fluctuate during the day, worsening in the evenings. Delirium may be 'hyperactive', with increased mood lability, agitation, and/or uncooperative behaviour, or 'hypoactive', with poor responsiveness and stupor.

   Delirium is a physiological consequence of another medical condition, substance intoxication or withdrawal, exposure to a toxin, or multiple aetiologies. Treatment of delirium necessitates treatment of the underlying cause. Non-pharmacological measures to reduce confusion include a calm, predictable care environment, effective communication, verbal reorientation, and maintenance of the circadian rhythm. Medicine management of agitation, distress, or uncooperative behaviour may be necessary to facilitate nursing and treatment of the underlying condition. Currently, haloperidol, IM is recommended if non-pharmacological measures are insufficient. Haloperidol IM 5mg/ml and 20mg/2ml were discontinued in South Africa by Pfizer and supply has been erratic.

5. **Purpose/Objective i.e., PICO question**:
   - **Population**
     People ≥18 years treated for delirium (formally diagnosed using a validated tool) or sub-syndromal delirium (presence of some delirium symptoms) in an acute care (e.g., primary health clinic/ community health clinic/ hospital emergency room, medical or surgical ward), intensive care, or palliative care setting. Exclude studies solely focusing on people with substance intoxication or withdrawal or people in psychiatric care settings.
   - **Intervention**
     Olanzapine IM and orodispersible tablets, any dose
   - **Comparators**
     Haloperidol IM +/- promethazine IM, any dose

Benzodiazepines: any dose, given orally or IM
Placebo

- **Outcomes**

  Efficacy
  - Duration of delirium (days)
  - Change in delirium severity, assessed by validated instruments.
  - Change in agitation score
  - Delirium resolution (defined as reduction of delirium rating scale below a target set by the authors or complete resolution of symptoms)
  - Use of physical restraint
  - Other – hospital/ intensive care unit (ICU) length of stay (days), hospital discharge disposition (e.g., rehabilitation, chronic care facility, home), health-related quality of life (as reported by study authors)

  Safety
  - Extrapyramidal side effects (EPS); use of anticholinergic medication
  - Adverse events as defined by the study authors (e.g., prolongation of the QTc interval, sudden cardiac death, cerebral vascular events, seizures, extrapyramidal effects, long-term cognitive impairment (e.g., change in Mini Mental Status Exam or as reported by study authors))
  - Mortality

- **Study types**

  Clinical practice guidelines, health technology assessments, systematic reviews of randomised controlled trials (RCTs), RCTs and, if the latter is unavailable, systematic reviews of non-randomised/ observational studies or observational studies. Ongoing trials were also sought.

**Methods:**

a. **Data sources**:
   Clinical Practice Guidelines sources searched were the Guidelines International Network (GIN) Library, the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) and the British Association of Clinical Pharmacology, as well as relevant clinical practice guidelines from Australia, New Zealand and Canada on their government websites, searched via Google. Systematic reviews and randomised controlled trials were sought in PubMed, the Cochrane Library, and Epistemonikos.

b. **Search strategy –** A search strategy was developed for PubMed and adapted to other databases (Appendix 1). A search for systematic reviews and RCTs was conducted on PubMed, the Cochrane Library, and Epistemonikos on 4 March 2022 (Appendix 1). The search was inclusive of all populations (with acute agitation or delirium) as the two review topics were happening in parallel and this was most efficient approach for searching and screening.

**Screening, data extraction and analysis, evidence synthesis:** Records were uploaded into the reference management software, COVIDENCE. Titles and abstracts were screened independently and in duplicate (NG, MM, TK, LR). Thereafter, full text screening was done by two reviewers, including tagging the study design (RCT or SR) and the population (delirium or acute agitation) and checked by a third reviewer. Discrepancies were discussed with LR and TK to finalise selection. We took a step-wise approach, screening for systematic reviews first and then for RCTs. Data extraction for included reviews was done by one reviewer and checked by a second reviewer. Eligible clinical guidelines were appraised with the AGREE II tool by two reviewers (MM and NG). Eligible systematic reviews were appraised using the AMSTAR II Checklist, and eligible RCTs were assessed for Risk of Bias using the Cochrane's RoB 2.0 Tool. Data was extracted into Characteristics of Included studies tables (tables 2 and 3). For dichotomous outcomes, we reported risk ratios (RR) with 95% confidence intervals (CI). We reported results from the review or trial where possible. Despite the intervention in these studies being haloperidol, and olanzapine being the comparator, outcomes of results were not reanalysed in RevMan to align with the review

question as denominators for the systematic reviews were not available and we wanted to keep the results standardised. Where available, we reported on the GRADE (level of certainty) of the evidence.

**c. Excluded studies:** Reasons for excluding full-texts were agreed in duplicate with a third reviewer finalizing any disputes.

**Results:**

1. Search results

We searched PubMed, Epistemonikos and the Cochrane Library on 4 March 2022. We identified 778 records which were imported for screening, with 147 duplicates removed. Furthermore, three records were identified from experts in the field and three were identified through reference searching. We screened 636 abstracts, of which 541 were irrelevant. 95 full-text studies were assessed for eligibility; 86 studies were excluded. There were nine included studies: two systematic reviews, three RCTs and four ongoing studies.

The Prisma Flow Chart is available in Appendix 2.

2. Description of included clinical guidelines, systematic reviews and RCTs

Table 1 reports a summary of the guidelines, Table 2 reports the main characteristics and outcomes of the included systematic reviews, and Table 3 reports the main characteristics and outcomes of included randomised controlled trials. Appendix 2 describes the excluded studies and Appendix 3 provides a summary of ongoing trials.

**2.1. Clinical guidelines:**

We identified three guidelines

1. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management[6]
2. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN). Risk reduction and management of delirium[7]
3. Victorian Government Department of Human Services. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of delirium in older people[8]

Following appraisal with AGREE II, all three were assessed as moderate to good quality (see Table 1). The NICE guideline was first issued in July 2010, and updated in March 2019. This guideline offers guidance around modifiable risk factors to identify people at risk of developing acute delirium, diagnosis of delirium in long-term, critical and acute care settings, and pharmacological as well as non-pharmacological interventions for reducing delirium incidence and consequences, and reducing the severity, duration and consequences of delirium in adults (18 years and older) in a hospital or long-term residential care. This guideline had an overall AGREE II score of 83%. Of note is that olanzapine was removed from the updated NICE guideline (2019), as haloperidol now has UK marketing authorisation for delirium treatment (though, discontinued from the South African market).

The SIGN delirium guideline was first published in March 2019. This guideline provides guidance for reducing the risk of delirium, as well as the detection, assessment, treatment and follow up of adults with delirium in all settings (patient homes, long term care, hospitals, and hospices). This guideline had an overall AGREE II score of 67%.

The Victorian Government Department of Human Services' guideline for the management of delirium in older people was published in 2006 and provides recommendations in the assessment and management of older people (65 years and older, or 45 years and older in in Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people) in Australia in hospitals, and across healthcare settings, as well as the prevention of delirium in at-risk older people, identifying and defining appropriate health service provision and management options to ensure the best possible health outcomes. This guideline had an overall AGREE II score of 83%.

Recommendations related to this review (olanzapine vs haloperidol) are summarized in Table 1. Domain scores for the AGREE II Appraisals can be found in Appendix 3.

**Table 1: Summary of Guidelines and AGREE II scores**

| Name | Recommendation | AGREE II |
|---|---|---|
| National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). **Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management** | The NICE group recommends that if a person with delirium is distressed or considered a risk to themselves or others and verbal and non-verbal de-escalation techniques are ineffective or inappropriate, consider giving short-term (usually for 1 week or less) *haloperidol or olanzapine*, starting at the lowest clinically appropriate dose and titrating cautiously according to symptoms (conditional, very low certainty evidence)<br>In the most recent review of this guidance (2019) olanzapine was removed as a treatment option in favour of haloperidol, which had achieved authorisation for the indication of delirium in the United Kingdom. | 83% |
| Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN). **Risk reduction and management of delirium**. | The SIGN group states "Because the studies identified are underpowered, larger trials are needed before recommendations can be made on the use of antipsychotics for the treatment of patients in ICU with delirium." (1++ - High-quality meta-analyses, systematic reviews of RCTs, or RCTs with a very low risk of bias) | 67% |
| Victorian Government Department of Human Services. **Clinical practice guidelines for the management of delirium in older people.** | The Victorian Government Department of Human services recommends that antipsychotic medication should only be used for the treatment of severe behavioural disturbances and or severe emotional disturbances when there is clear intent for its use (e.g. severe agitation interfering with sleep-wake cycle). When used, "Titrated antipsychotics need to be closely monitored by nursing and medical staff. The dosage and frequency should be titrated carefully against the level of agitation at each review. Titration must commence from a low dose typically commencing with the equivalence of 0.25-0.50mg of haloperidol; olanzapine 2.5 mg orally; or risperidone 0.25 mg orally." (III-2 – a comparative study with concurrent controls (non-randomised experimental trial, cohort study, case-control study, interrupted time-series with a control group)) | 83% |

**2.2 Systematic reviews**

We identified two systematic reviews for inclusion

1. Finucane 2020. Drug therapy for delirium in terminally ill adults[9]
2. NICE Review within the NICE guideline[6]

Finucane 2020[9], a Cochrane Systematic Review, reviewed evidence of pharmacological therapy for delirium management in terminally ill adults (including terminal agitation, distress or restlessness). The setting was not specified. The NICE review[6] reviewed delirium management in hospitalized participants (age 18 years or older) regardless of whether in a surgical, medical, ICU and emergency ward, mental health settings, and long-term care settings. In both reviews, delirium was defined by the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders (DSM-5 or earlier criteria).

Primary outcomes assessed in Finucane 2020 were 1) delirium symptoms within 24 to 48 hours, 2) agitation score within 24 to 48 hours and 3) the number of adverse events (including extrapyramidal side effects). Secondary outcomes included 1) the use of any rescue medication (such as midazolam), 2) cognitive status and 3) survival.

Primary outcome measures in the NICE review were 1) duration of delirium and 2) number recovered from delirium. The secondary outcomes included 1) severity of delirium, 2) length of stay, 3) incidence of cognitive impairment or dementia, 4) number of patients in hospital discharged to new long-term care placement, 5) mortality, 6) number of patients with persisting delirium, 7) quality of life (patient), 8) quality of life (carer), and

9) adverse effects associated with the intervention (including extrapyramidal side effects). Outcome results are summarised in Table 2.

There was only one included RCT (Lin 2008) in Finucane 2020 that compared haloperidol to olanzapine. The full text for the included RCT was not found despite extensive searching (searching online databases, contacting trial and review authors). Two outcomes of interest were reported in this RCT and are further detailed in Table 2.
Within the NICE review, olanzapine was considered in two comparisons: olanzapine versus no treatment (one RCT, Hu 2006 – 103 participants, full text not available for review) and haloperidol versus olanzapine (Hu 2006 and Skrobik 2004, Skrobik 2004 is summarized below under the RCTs, Table 3). Finucane 2020 had a moderate AMSTAR II rating. The quality was marked down as authors did not explain their selections of study designs included in the review. The NICE review had a high AMSTAR II rating of 4. GRADE evidence ratings are summarized in Table 2.

**2.3 RCTs**

We identified three randomised controlled trial for inclusion

1. Skrobik 2004. Olanzapine vs haloperidol: treating delirium in a critical care setting[10]
2. Jain 2017. Comparison of efficacy of haloperidol and olanzapine in the treatment of delirium[11]
3. Van der Vorst 2020. Olanzapine versus haloperidol for treatment of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a phase III randomized clinical trial[12]

The trials were conducted in three countries (Canada (one site), India (one site) and The Netherlands (five sites)). Sample sizes varied from 73 to 100 participants and took place in a medical-surgical ICU (Skrobik 2004[10]), medical emergency wards (Jain 2017[11]) and a medical oncology ward or high-care hospice facility (van der Vorst 2020[12]). All three trials compared haloperidol to olanzapine. In Skrobik 2004, participants were randomised to haloperidol, initiated at 2.5 to 5mg 8 hourly (either orally or via an enteral tube) or olanzapine at 5mg daily. Older patients (60 years and above) received a lower starting dose (haloperidol 0.5 to 1mg, olanzapine 2.5mg). Titration thereafter was based on clinician judgment. In Jain 2017, the mean daily doses of olanzapine and haloperidol were 5.49mg (range 2.5mg) and 2.10mg (range 1 to 5mg) respectively. Doses were determined by the participants' Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale (MDAS) score. In van der Vorst 2020, dosing was age-adjusted and based on clinical practice guidelines. Patients under 75 years old were started on haloperidol 1mg or olanzapine 5mg. This was titrated every 40min for haloperidol and two hours for olanzapine, according to the delirium observation scale (DOS) to a maximum on day 1 of 20mg po or 10mg subcutaneously (sc) for haloperidol, and 20mg po or IM for olanzapine. The doses were halved for patients 75 years and older.

Jain 2017 reported on duration of delirium (days). Skrobik 2004, Jain 2017 and van der Vorst 2020 reported on change in delirium sensitivity – however, the three trials used different instruments of measuring this outcome and so we could not compare in meta-analysis (Skrobik 2004 used change in delirium index scores, Jain 2017 used mean MDAS scores at baseline and at the end of the study period, and van der Vorst used delirium response rate (DRR) as defined by Delirium Rating Scale-R-98 (DRS-R-98) assessment). Van der Vorst 2020 reported on delirium resolution (days). In terms of safety outcomes, Skrobik 2004 and van der Vorst 2020 reported on extrapyramidal side effects. Jain 2017 and van der Vorst 2020 reported on adverse events.

Two of the trials (Skrobik 2004 and Jain 2017) were rated as having a high risk of bias. Skrobik 2004 was rated high due to quasi-randomization of allocation sequence and baseline differences between allocation groups, no information around participant blinding and effects of assignment, no information around a prespecified plan or protocol. Jain 2017 was rated high due to this being a single-blind study, limited information on statistical methods, no information around data available for all participants and missingness, potential bias from researchers not being blinded, and no information around a pre-specified analysis plan. Van der Vorst 2020 was rated as having some concerns of bias due to no information around pre-specified plan or protocol.

## 3. Description of excluded studies

We excluded 86 full texts – 41 for wrong indication, 16 were awaiting classification, 10 for wrong study design, 7 for wrong intervention, 5 for wrong patient population, 3 for wrong outcomes, 3 for wrong language and 1 registered trial was stopped with recruitment issues. The excluded studies with reasons are listed in Appendix 2.

**EFFECTIVENESS OF THE INTERVENTION**

| Comparison | Number of studies |
|---|---|
| 1. Olanzapine vs Haloperidol | 2 systematic reviews, 3 RCTs (one is quasi-randomised) |
| 2. Olanzapine vs Benzodiazepines | 0 studies identified |
| 3. Olanzapine vs Placebo | 1 systematic review |

**Comparison 1: Olanzapine vs Haloperidol**

**Efficacy**

*Critical outcomes:* None of the 5 included studies reported on the following outcomes:

- change in agitation score,
- use of physical restraint,
- hospital/ICU length of stay,
- hospital discharge disposition and
- health related quality of life

*Important outcomes*

1. **Duration of delirium (days):**
   - *NICE review 2010 (updated in 2019):* The effect of haloperidol compared to olanzapine on duration of delirium is uncertain. Mean Difference (MD) 0.62 days, 95% CI 0.06 to 1.18, one RCT, n = 146, 1 trial, very low certainty evidence due to study quality, and imprecision
   - *Jain 2017:* The mean duration of treatment (days) was similar, 3.57 days (+- 0.92 days) in the olanzapine arm and 3.37 days (+- 0.71 days) in the haloperidol arm.

2. **Change in delirium severity:**

   Results were reported from three studies at different time points and using different measures. Overall, they found there was no difference in delirium severity between olanzapine and haloperidol.

   - *Finucane 2020:* Change in delirium severity: there may be little or no difference in change in delirium severity with olanzapine compared to haloperidol (Very low certainty evidence due to critical imprecision)
     1) within 24 hours: the mean difference (MD) between treatment arms was 2.36 (95% CI -0.75 to 5.47).
     2) between 24 and 48hrs: MD 1.90 (95% CI -1.50 to 5.30)
   - *NICE review:* There may be no difference in change in delirium severity score (delirium Rating Scale – DRS) comparing haloperidol and olanzapine. MD 0.7, 95% CI 0.45 to 1.85, n =146, 1 trial, moderate certainty evidence rated down due to poor study quality)
   - *Skrobik 2004:* There was a comparable reduction in the DI score in both groups over time (ANOVA time effect p 0.02, group effect p 0.83, interaction effect p 0.64)
   - *Jain 2017:* the mean MDAS score at baseline was 18.49 in the olanzapine group and 17.79 in the haloperidol group (the groups were comparable at baseline, p 0.791). The mean MDAS score at the end of the study period was 8.43 in the olanzapine group and 8.00 in the haloperidol group.
   - *Van der Vorst 2020:* The delirium response rate (DRR) was in the Olanzapine arm was 45% (95% CI 31 to 59) and 57% (95% CI 43 to 71) in the haloperidol arm (ΔDRR −12%; odds ratio [OR], 0.61; 95% CI, 0.2–1.4)

3. **Delirium resolution** (defined as reduction of delirium rating scale below a target set by the authors or complete resolution of symptoms): Results were reported from three studies. Overall, they found there was little or no difference in delirium resolution between olanzapine and haloperidol.
   - *NICE review:* There may be little to no difference comparing haloperidol and olanzapine. Risk Ratio (RR) 0.99, 95% CI 0.8 to 1.21, p=0.24, $I^2$=27%, n = 218, 2 trials (low certainty evidence due to poor study quality and indirectness from delirium assessment).
   - *Van der Vorst 2020:* The TRR (time from randomisation to resolution) was 4.5 days (95% CI 3.2 to 5.9) in the Olanzapine and 2.8 days (95% CI 1.9 to 3.7) in the haloperidol arm.

**Safety**

1. **Mortality**
   - Not reported.
2. **Extrapyramidal side effects (EPS):**
   - *NICE review:* We are uncertain about the difference in occurrence of EPS between haloperidol and olanzapine groups, RR 8.2, 95% CI 0.48 to 140.09, n = 73 , 1 quasi-RCT (very low certainty evidence due to study design limitations, and imprecision). Six participants rated low scores on extrapyramidal symptom testing (1 for the Ross Chouinard, 1–4 for the Simpson-Angus scale) in the haloperidol arm. There were no extrapyramidal manifestations in the olanzapine arm.
   - *Van der Vorst 2020:* six participants (12.2%) experienced EPS in the haloperidol group (three with tremors, two with muscle stiffness and one with QTc prolongation), compared to four (8.2%) in the olanzapine group (two with tremors, one with dizziness and one with muscle stiffness).

3. **Requiring anticholinergic medication:**
   - *Skrobik 2004:* no participants in either the haloperidol or olanzapine groups received prophylactic or therapeutic antiparkinsonian therapy.

4. **Adverse events:**
   - *Jain 2017:* There were two participants in the olanzapine group with adverse effects (one with excessive sedation, one with akathisia), and three in haloperidol group (drug-induced parkinsonism). All side effects were mild in severity. EPS were not defined separately but included under adverse events and as such have been reported here.
   - *Van der Vorst 2020:* 13 out of 46 patients (26.5%) in the olanzapine arm and 16 out of 49 patients (32.7%) in the haloperidol arm reported treatment-related adverse effects of any grade. Five patient (10.2%) in the olanzapine group and 10 patients (20.4%) in the haloperidol group reports Grade 3 or above TRAEs (OR 0.4, 95% CI 0.1 to 1.4, p=0.16). There were no treatment-related deaths.

**Comparison 2: Olanzapine vs Benzodiazepines**

None of the included studies compared olanzapine to benzodiazepines

**Comparison 3: Olanzapine vs Placebo (NICE review)**

**Efficacy**

*Critical outcomes*: The NICE review did not report on the following outcomes:

- change in agitation score
- use of physical restraint, hospital/ICU length of stay
- hospital discharge disposition and
- health related quality of life.

*Less critical outcomes:*

1. **Duration of delirium (days):** We are uncertain of the effect of olanzapine compared to placebo on duration of delirium MD=-2.4, 95% CI -3.51,-1.29, n = 103, 1 trial. (Low certainty evidence due to very poor study quality and imprecision)

**2. Change in delirium severity**: There is probably a reduction in the delirium rating scale (DRS) in favour of olanzapine compared to placebo MD = -11.1, 95% CI -15.51 to -7.69, n=103, 1 trial. (Moderate certainty evidence due to poor study quality and imprecision)

3. **Delirium resolution** (defined as reduction of delirium rating scale below a target set by the authors or complete resolution of symptoms): Outcome "Complete Response" reported that there is probably a more rapid resolution of delirium symptoms in favour of the olanzapine compared to placebo, RR=3.68, 95% CI 1.63 to 8.33, n=103, 1 trial. (Moderate certainty evidence due to poor study quality, indirectness and imprecision)

**Safety**

For this comparison, the NICE review did not report on extrapyramidal side-effects, if anticholinergic medication was required, drug-related adverse events or mortality.

**Conclusion**

We identified two reviews and three trials addressing the outcomes of interest, comparing olanzapine to haloperidol. In patients with delirium, there is probably little or no difference in olanzapine compared to haloperidol in the outcomes of interest. We are uncertain about the difference in occurrence of extrapyramidal side-effects and other adverse events in olanzapine compared to haloperidol.

We identified one review addressing the outcomes of interest, comparing olanzapine to placebo. In patients with delirium, we are uncertain of the effect of olanzapine compared to placebo in duration of delirium. There is probably a reduction in the delirium rating scale and a more rapid resolution of delirium symptoms in favour of olanzapine compared to placebo. There were no data on any safety outcomes.

Due to small study sizes and methodological limitations in the studies, the evidence was generally of low to very low certainty. This indicates a research gap. Larger rigorous RCTs are needed.

**Table 2: Characteristics of Included Systematic Reviews: Delirium**

| CITATION | STUDY DESIGN | POPULATION (N) | INTERVENTION *vs* COMPARATOR | OUTCOMES & MAIN FINDINGS | COMMENTS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Comparison 1: Haloperidol compared to Olanzapine** | | | | | |
| Finucane AM, Jones L, Leurent B, Samson EL, Stone P, Tookman A, et al. Drug therapy for delirium **in terminally ill adults**. Cochrane Database Sys. Rev. 2020;1. Doi: 10.1002/14651858.CD004770.pub3 | Systematic review | Terminally ill adults (18 years or older) with delirium symptoms<br><br>Included studies: RCTs | Haloperidol compared to Olanzapine | Delirium symptoms within 24 hours<br>n= 28, one trial<br>mean difference (MD) 2.36 (95% CI -0.75 to 5.47, p=0.14)<br><br>Delirium symptoms between 24 and 48 hours<br>n=24, one trial<br>MD 1.9 (95% CI -1.5 to 5.3, p=0.27)<br><br>**Very low certainty** (both outcomes), downgraded by 3 levels due to so few data that the results were highly susceptible to chance | AMSTAR – Moderate quality<br>• Study design not explained<br>• No meta-analysis |
| NICE Review (within CPG)<br><br>National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). **Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management** [Internet]. [London]: NICE; 2010 [updated July 2020]. (Clinical guideline 103 [CG103]). Available from:<br><br>https://www.nice.org.uk/Guidance/CG103 | Systematic review | Adult patients (18 years or older) in a hospital setting (surgical, medical, ICU, or emergency departments) or in long-term residential care with delirium.<br><br>Included studies: RCTs and quasi randomized trials. Non-randomised studies (NRS) were included only if no other evidence, with preference to large cohort studies and comparative non-randomised designs.<br><br>Exclusion criteria:<br>Younger than 18 years<br>Receiving end-of-life care<br>Intoxication and or acute withdrawal from drugs or alcohol, with associated delirium | Haloperidol compared to olanzapine | Complete response (resolution)<br>n=219, 2 trials<br>RR=0.99 (95% CI 0.8 to 1.21, p=0.24, $I^2$=27%)<br><br>**Low certainty** downgraded due to poor study quality (not blinded, inadequate sequence generation and allocation concealment, funding and outcome possibly inadequate) and imprecision.<br><br>Duration of delirium<br>n=146, 1 trial<br>MD=0.62 (95% CI 0.06 to 1.18)<br><br>**Very low certainty**, downgraded for very poor study quality, imprecision and reported as “time to take effect” in responders only, likely to be biased<br><br>Severity of Delirium<br>n=146, 1 trial<br>MD=0.7 (95% CI 0.45 to 1.85)<br><br>**Moderate certainty,** downgraded due to poor study quality (not blinded) and imprecision (number of patients < 400) | AMSTAR – High quality<br>• Data extraction not in duplicate |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Adverse events<br>n=73, 1 included trial<br>RR=8.2 (95% CI 0.48 to 140.09)<br><br>**Very low certainty**, downgraded due to very poor study quality (quasi-randomised, not blinded) and imprecision( wide confidence interval) | |
| **Comparison 2: Olanzapine vs placebo** | | | | | |
| NICE Review (within CPG)<br><br>National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). **Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management** [Internet]. [London]: NICE; 2010 [updated July 2020]. (Clinical guideline 103 [CG103]). Available from:<br><br>https://www.nice.org.uk/Guidance/CG103 | Systematic review | Adult patients (18 years or older) in a hospital setting (surgical, medical, ICU, or emergency departments) or in long-term residential care with delirium.<br><br>Included studies: RCTs and quasi randomized trials. Non-randomised studies (NRS) were included only if no other evidence, with preference to large cohort studies and comparative non-randomised designs.<br><br>Exclusion criteria:<br>Younger than 18 years<br>Receiving end-of-life care<br>Intoxication and or acute withdrawal from drugs or alcohol, with associated delirium | Olanzapine compared to placebo | Complete response<br>n=103, 1 included trial<br>RR=3.68 (95% CI 1.63 to 8.33)<br><br>**Moderate certainty** due to poor study quality (not blinded) indirectness (indirect outcome through delirium assessment method) and imprecision (number of events < 300).<br><br>Duration of delirium<br>n=103, 1 included trial<br>MD=-2.4 (95% CI 3.51 to -1.29)<br><br>**Very low certainty** due to poor study quality (evidence of confounding and not blinded) and imprecision (wide confidence interval).<br><br>Severity of Delirium<br>n=103, 1 included trial<br>MD=-11.1 (95% CI 14.51 to -7.69)<br><br>**Moderate certainty** due to poor study quality (not blinded) and imprecision (number of patients < 400). | AMSTAR – High quality<br>• Data extraction not in duplicate |

**Table 3: Characteristics of Included Randomised Controlled Trials: Delirium**

| CITATION | STUDY DESIGN | POPULATION (N) | INTERVENTION *vs* COMPARATOR | OUTCOMES & MAIN FINDINGS | RISK OF BIAS |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Comparison 1: Haloperidol versus Olanzapine** | | | | | |
| Skrobik YK, Bergeron N, Dumont M, Gottfried SB. Olanzapine vs haloperidol: treating delirium in a **critical care setting**. Intensive Care Med. 2004;30:444-9. Doi: 10.1007/s00134-003-2117-0 | Design<br>Prospective quasi-randomized trial. Single blinding (treating nurses and physician not blinded to assigned drug)<br><br>Duration<br>July 2000 to September 2001.<br>Funding<br>Peer-reviewed grant from the Zyprexa fund, Eli-Lilly, North America<br><br>Ethics<br>Protocol approved by the institutional scientific and ethics committee | Adults aged 18 to 75 years admitted to medical-surgical ICT in Montreal. All patients with delirium (as defined below) were considered eligible for the study.<br><br>Sample size 73 included in final analysis (Haloperidol n=45, Olanzapine n=28)<br>103 considered eligible, 80 informed consent obtained, 3 withdrawn, 2 status changed to "no active treatment", 1 suspected drug interaction, 1 data lost<br><br>Inclusion criteria<br>Admitted for more than 24 hours, participants screened 3 times daily for delirium with the ICU Delirium Screening Checklist (ICU-DSC). In participants with a score >= 4 or with clinical manifestations of delirium, diagnosis confirmed by physician using DSM-IV criteria.<br><br>Exclusion criteria<br>Pregnant patients who received antipsychotic medication within 10 days prior to admission;<br>Pregnant patients with contraindications to haloperidol or olanzapine;<br>Gastrointestinal dysfunction that did not allow oral or enteral drug administration;<br>Neurological status did not allow neuropsychiatric examination e.g. coma<br><br>Other caveats<br>Patients who developed agitation were allowed intravenous haloperidol ("rescue haloperidol") | Intervention<br>Enteral olanzapine 5mg daily<br>(>60yrs: 2.5mg daily)<br><br>Comparator<br>Enteral haloperidol 2.5 to 5mg every 8 hours<br>(>60yrs: 0.5 to 1 mg 8 hourly)<br><br>Subsequent titration based on clinical judgement.<br>Benzodiazepine use noted as adjuvant therapy. | Outcomes<br>1. Change in mean daily delirium scores (delirium index (DI) scores)<br>2. Adjunct benzodiazepine use requirements over time<br>3. Use of rescue haloperidol, opiates, sedatives, Ramsay scores, vital signs and liver function tests in both groups.<br>4. Presence of extrapyramidal side effects (EPS)<br>Results<br>1. Comparable reduction in DI score over time was noted in both groups, with no difference (ANOVA time effect p=0.02, group effect p=0.83 interaction effect p=0.64)<br>2. Benzodiazepines: Analysis of variance did not identify any difference between the two groups, at any of the 5 measurement times (interaction effect p=0.94 group effect p=0.9).<br>3. " The dose of rescue haloperidol, opiates, sedatives other than benzodiazepines, Ramsay scores, vital signs, and liver function tests were no different between groups."<br>4. Haloperidol: 6 rated low scores on extrapyramidal symptom testing (1 for the Ross Chouinard, 1–4 for the Simpson-Angus scale).<br>Olanzapine: no extrapyramidal manifestations or adverse effects | **HIGH RISK OF BIAS**<br><br>All outcomes: **High risk of bias** in domain 1 due to quasi-randomisation of allocation sequence and baseline differences between allocation groups, **some concerns** in domain 2 due to no information around participant blinding and effects of assignment, and **some concerns** in domain 5 due to no information around a prespecified plan or protocol. **Low risk of bias** in domains 3 and 4. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Jain R, Arun P, Sidana A, Sachdev A. Comparison of efficacy of haloperidol and olanzapine in the treatment of delirium. Indian J Psychiatry. 2017;59(4):451-6. Doi: 10.4103/psychiatry.IndianJ Psychiatry_59_17 | Design<br>Open label, randomized controlled study. Randomisation through computer-generated random number table<br><br>Duration<br>December 2011 to December 2012. Patients assessed every 24 hours until delirium resolution.<br><br>Trial registry<br>Registered with the Clinical Trial Registry-India CTRI/2016/10/007331<br><br>Ethics<br>Approved by local institutional ethics committee<br><br>Funding<br>None<br><br>Other<br>Assessment of delirium through Confusion Assessment Method (CAM), and diagnosis using DSM-IV criteria. Delirium severity assessed with Memorial Delirium Assessment Scale (MDAS). Simpson-Angus Scale (SAS) used to assess EPS | Delirious patients admitted to medicine emergency ward and referred to the Department of Psychiatry for consultation at the Government Medical College and Hospital, Chandigarh, India.<br><br>Sample Size 100<br>132 enrolled; 32 dropped out after randomization and were not included in the final analysis; Olanzapine n=47 Haloperidol n=53<br><br>Inclusion criteria<br>Delirious patient plus<br>>18 years old;<br>Verbally responsive;<br>No dementia<br><br>Exclusion criteria<br>Mechanically ventilated;<br>Mute;<br>Currently on antipsychotics for any reason;<br>Experiencing alcohol or benzodiazepine withdrawal delirium;<br>Hypersensitivity to either olanzapine or haloperidol in the past. | Intervention<br>Olanzapine, enteral only, 2.5 to 10mg daily orally or via nasogastric tube (NGT)<br><br>Comparator<br>Haloperidol, enteral only, 1 to 4mg orally or via NGT tube<br><br>Doses based on MDAS scores of mild, moderate or severe delirium. | Outcomes<br>1. Efficacy of olanzapine and haloperidol in delirium<br>2. Tolerability of olanzapine and haloperidol in delirium<br>3. Phrenology of delirium and pattern of symptom improvement with treatment<br><br>Results<br>• Delirium severity – mean MDAS score (baseline) 18.49 olanzapine group, 17.79 haloperidol group (groups comparable at baseline, p=0.791). mean MDAS score (end study period) 8.43 olanzapine group, 8.00 haloperidol group; 54.7% reduction in mean MDAS scores (54.4% in olanzapine group and 55% in haloperidol group<br>• Pattern of symptom improvement<br>○ Severity of attention on day 2 and severity of disorganized thinking on days 2 and 3 were less in the olanzapine group (p<0.05).<br>○ Severity of perceptual disturbances on day 4, and severity of psychomotor disturbances on days 3 and 4 were less in the haloperidol group (p<0.05).<br>• Duration of treatment– mean duration of treatment (days) 3.57 olanzapine (+- 0.92 days), 3.37 haloperidol (+- 0.71 days), (p=0.233)<br>• Drug-related adverse effects – 2 in olanzapine group (1 with excessive sedation, 1 with akathisia), 3 in haloperidol group (drug-induced parkinsonism). All side effects were mild in severity. | **HIGH RISK OF BIAS**<br><br>All outcomes: **Some concerns** in domain 1 due to this being a single-blind study, **some concerns** in domain 2 due to single-blind study and limited information on statistical methods, **high risk of bias** in domain 3 due to no information around data available for all participants and missingness, **high risk of bias** in domain 4 due to potential bias from researchers not being blinded, and **some concerns** domain 5 due to no information around a pre-specified analysis plan. |
| Van der Vorst MJDL, Neefjes ECW, Boddaert MSA, Verdegaal BATT, Beeker A, Teunissen SCC, et al. Olanzapine versus haloperidol for treatment of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a phase III randomized clinical trial. Oncologist. | Design<br>Multicentre, randomized controlled, phase III trial. Conducted at five sites in the Netherlands. Study terminated early as unlikely to reach the predefined efficacy criteria.<br><br>Trial registry | Patients ≥ 18 years old with advanced cancer, admitted to a medical oncology ward or high-care hospice facility<br><br>Sample size 100<br>50 allocated to each group | Intervention<br>Olanzapine, po or IMI<br><br>Comparator<br>Haloperidol, po or sc | Outcomes:<br>*Primary endpoint:* Delirium Response Rate (DRR) on days 1 to 7 after randomization as defined by DRS-R-98 assessment<br>*Secondary endpoints:*<br>TRR (time from randomization to resolution of delirium in days)<br>TRAEs (treatment related adverse events), according to the CTCAE version 4.03 | **SOME CONCERNS**<br><br>All outcomes: **Some concerns** in domain 5 due to no information around pre-specified plan or protocol. **Low risk of bias** in domains 1 to 4. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 2020; 25:e570-7. Doi: https://doi.org/10.1634/theoncologist.2019-0470 | NCT01539733<br><br>Duration<br>January 2011 to July 2016<br><br>Funding<br>Netherlands Organization for Health Research and Development (ZonMw) Palliative Care Program (No. 11510011).<br><br>Ethics<br>Written informed consent | Olanzapine – 9 discontinued treatment. Analysis – Intention-to-treat (ITT) n=49, per protocol n = 40<br>Haloperidol – 8 discontinued treatment. Analysis – ITT n = 49, per protocol n = 41<br><br>Inclusion criteria<br>18 years or older;<br>Advanced cancer;<br>Admitted to medical oncology ward or high-care hospice facility;<br>Fluent in the Dutch language;<br>Diagnosed with delirium.<br><br>Exclusion criteria<br>Diagnoses of glaucoma, Parkinson's disease, dementia or psychiatric disorders interfering with delirium assessment;<br>history of neuroleptic malignant syndrome or convulsions;<br>delirium due to substance withdrawal<br>cardiac conduction abnormalities;<br>Currently using other neuroleptic medication or lithium. | | Delirium-related distress for patients and their caregivers assessed by DEQ<br><br>Results<br>DRR: Olanzapine 45% (95% CI 31 to 59)<br>Haloperidol 57% (95% CI 43 to 71)<br>(ΔDRR −12%, odds ratio [OR] 0.61, 95% CI 0.2–1.4 p = 0.23) (ITT)<br><br>TRR: Olanzapine 4.5 days (95% CI 3.2 to 5.9)<br>Haloperidol 2.8 days (95% CI 1.9 to 3.7) (p = 0.18)<br><br>DRR for motor subtypes (ITT)<br>Hyperactive OR 0.5, 95% CI 0.1 to 2.1, p=0.50<br>Hypoactive OR 0.2, 95% CI 0.04 to 1.5, p=0.12<br>Mixed OR 1.8, 95% CI 0.4 to 7.9, p=0.49<br><br>Safety<br>TRAEs of any grade<br>Olanzapine arm: 13 patients (26.5%)<br>Haloperidol arm: 16 patients (32.7%)<br>Grade ≥3 TRAEs<br>Olanzapine arm: 5 patients (10.2%)<br>Haloperidol arm: 10 patients (20.4%)<br>(OR 0.4, 95% CI 0.1 to 1.4, p=0.16)<br>No treatment related deaths<br><br>Delirium-Related Distress<br>Sixteen patients completed this DEQ in each treatment arm.<br>Mean delirium-related distress level (0 – 4 numerical rating scale)<br>Olanzapine 2.1 (SD 1.4)<br>Haloperidol 2.3 (SD 1.4)<br>Mean delirium-related distress level (spouse/caregiver)<br>Olanzapine 3.0 (SD 1.2)<br>Haloperidol 2.7 (SD 1.1)<br>Mean delirium-related distress level (nurses)<br>Olanzapine 1.1 (SD 1.1)<br>Haloperidol 0.9 (SD 0.9) | |

## Evidence to decision framework

| | JUDGEMENT | EVIDENCE & ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS |
|---|---|---|
| QUALITY OF EVIDENCE OF BENEFIT | **What is the certainty/quality of evidence?**<br>High ☐ Moderate ☐ Low ☐ Very low ☒<br>*High quality:* confident in the evidence<br>*Moderate quality:* mostly confident, but further research may change the effect<br>*Low quality:* some confidence, further research likely to change the effect<br>*Very low quality:* findings indicate uncertain effect | For important outcomes there were limitations in the data: small study sizes, methodological limitations in the studies, the evidence was generally of low to very low certainty. No data on critical outcomes. |
| EVIDENCE OF BENEFIT | **What is the size of the effect for beneficial outcomes?**<br>Large ☐ Moderate ☐ Small ☒ None ☐ | Olanzapine vs haloperidol: no difference (none)<br>Olanzapine vs placebo: probably better efficacy (small and low levels of certainty)<br>Olanzapine vs benzodiazepines: no data |
| QUALITY OF EVIDENCE OF HARM | **What is the certainty/quality of evidence?**<br>High ☐ Moderate ☐ Low ☐ Very low ☒<br>*High quality:* confident in the evidence<br>*Moderate quality:* mostly confident, but further research may change the effect<br>*Low quality:* some confidence, further research likely to change the effect<br>*Very low quality:* findings indicate uncertain effect | For important outcomes there were limitations in the data: small study sizes, methodological limitations in the studies, the evidence was generally of low to very low certainty. No data on critical outcomes |
| EVIDENCE OF HARMS | **What is the size of the effect for harmful outcomes?**<br>**L**arge ☐ Moderate ☐ Small ☒ None ☐ | Olanzapine vs haloperidol: no difference (none)<br>Olanzapine vs placebo: probably better efficacy (small)<br>Olanzapine vs benzodiazepines: no data |
| BENEFITS & HARMS | **Do the desirable effects outweigh the undesirable harms?**<br>Favours intervention ☐ Favours control ☐ Intervention = Control ~~*or* Uncertain~~ ☒ | Olanzapine vs haloperidol: no difference (intervention = control)<br>Olanzapine vs placebo: probably better efficacy (favours intervention) – but very low level of certainty of evidence<br>Olanzapine vs benzodiazepines: no data |
| THERAPEUTIC INTERCHANGE | Therapeutic alternatives available: N/A | |
| FEASABILITY | **Is implementation of this recommendation feasible?**<br>Yes ☒ No ☐ Uncertain ☐ | Olanzapine is not specifically registered for delirium; however, olanzapine oral is available in the public sector for other indications (bipolar disorder, schizophrenia). All formulations are available on the South African market.<br>The loss of IM haloperidol is disruptive in the change of clinical practice. |
| RESOURCE USE | **How large are the resource requirements?**<br>More intensive ☐ Less intensive ☐ Uncertain ☐ | **Price of medicines:**<br>**Medicine** \| **Tender price (ZAR)*** \| **100% OF SEP (ZAR)**** \| **60% OF SEP (ZAR)**<br>Haloperidol 5mg tablets, 500 \| 23.23 \| n/a \| n/a |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Haloperidol 5mg/5ml injection, single (discontinued) | n/a | 45.68*** | n/a |
| Olanzapine 10 mg injection | n/a | 72.84 | 43.71 |
| Olanzapine 5mg orodipersible (ODT, 30 | n/a | 267.41 | 160.45 |
| Olanzapine 2.5mg tablet (SOT), 28 | 13.80 | n/a | n/a |

* Contract circular HP09-2021SD, August 2022
**SEP database, July 2022
***SEP database, February 2021 (Haloperidol injection discontinued)

**Background:**

- *Adult Hospital Level STG and EML, 2019 edition*

Recommends haloperidol IM injection, but this has been discontinued from the South African market.

- *NICE Guideline 2010 (updated in March 2019)*

Recommendations for olanzapine include:

- IM injection: 2.5–10 mg per day, depending on response; the effect was observed for one week; delirium had 3 occurred from 30 min to 17 days (Hu 2006)
- Orally or by enteral tube: given within 2 h of the diagnosis of delirium, initially 5 mg per day (patients over 60 years 2.5 mg) then titrated based on clinical judgement for up to 5 days (Skrobik 2004)
- Orally/ sublingually: initial dose 1.25–2.5 mg then adjusted, depending on response, to 1.25–20 mg per day; the effect was observed for one week; delirium had occurred from 30 min to 17 days (Hu 2006)

- *NEMLC report (Adult Hospital 2019 review of palliative care chapter)*

*Haloperidol, oral: added*
*Haloperidol, SC/IV: added*
*Lorazepam, oral: added*
*Midazolam, SC/IV: added*
*Antipsychotic (haloperidol), oral/IV/SC: Low doses are generally recommended as 1strst line in guidelines, due to associated side-effects. However, a RCT (Agar,2017) showed that oral haloperidol and risperidone was less effective in reducing delirium symptoms than placebo and shortened overall survival. Limitations included the oral route of administration (possibly contributing to increased extrapyramidal side effects); increased administration of midazolam to the antipsychotic groups (possibly increasing paradoxical agitation and variable baseline demographics and precipitants of delirium were not reported in all groups. Cochrane review concluded that there is insufficient evidence to determine the role of medicine treatment for delirium in terminally ill patients; thus recommendations aligned with expert consensus.*
***Recommendation:** Low dose haloperidol as 1st line treatment for delirium in palliative care at secondary level of care.*
*Rationale: Aligned with guidelines.*
***Level of Evidence: III Guidelines***

- *Pharmacokinetic study by Markowitz et al, 2006*

Both routes of ODT administration (above the tongue and sublingually) resulted in more measurable early concentrations relative to SOT. However, there were no statistically significant differences observed between any of the olanzapine exposures for observed pharmacokinetic parameters (C(max), T(max), AUC(0-8h)).

- *Medicines.org.uk: Olanzapine 5mg ODT tablets - Summary of Product Characteristics (SmPC)*

Olanzapine ODT should be placed in the mouth, where it will rapidly disperse in saliva, so it can be easily swallowed. Removal of the intact ODT from the mouth is difficult. Since the ODT is fragile, it should be taken immediately on opening the blister. Alternatively, it may be dispersed in a full glass of water or other suitable beverage (orange juice, apple juice or milk) immediately before administration. Olanzapine ODT is bioequivalent to olanzapine film-coated tablets, with a similar rate and extent of absorption. It has the same dosage and frequency of administration as olanzapine film-coated tablets. Olanzapine ODT may be used as an alternative to olanzapine film-coated tablets.

- *Pharmacokinetic parameters:*

On review of the pharmacokinetic properties of olanzapine ODT and SOT formulations, bioequivalence can be assumed.

| | Tmax | T1/2 | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Haloperidol, IM | 10 minutes | 13 to 35 hrs | *SAMF, 2022* |
| Olanzapine ODT | 4 to 6 hrs | 33 hrs | *Markowitz, 2006* |
| Olanzapine SOT | 5 to 8 hrs | 33 hrs | *Callaghan JT, 1999* |
| Olanzapine, IM | 14 to 45 minutes | 33 hrs | *FDA PI (drugs.com)* |

**Comparative cost analysis per treatment course** *(comparing direct medicine prices):*

- **Haloperidol 0.5-1mg inj,** immediately 30 minutes later and 4-hourly to a max of 10mg per 24 hours *(Using the max dose of 2 x 5 mg inj per day for 3 days = 6 x 10 mg inj):* **R274.08** (Historic SEP price accessed through State S21)

- **Olanzapine 2.5-5mg inj**, immediately 30-60 minutes later and 4-hourly to a max of 20mg per 24 hours *(Using the max dose of 2 x 10 mg inj per day for 3 days = 6 x 10 mg inj):* **R437.06** (100% SEP) and **R262.24** (60% SEP).

- **Olanzapine 2.5-5mg SOT via NGT,** immediately 30-60 minutes later and 4-houlry to a max of 20mg per 24 hours *(Using the max dose of 8 x 2,5 mg tablets per day for 3 days = 24 x 2.5 mg tablets):* **R11.83** (Contract price)

- **Olanzapine 2.5-5mg ODT**, immediately 30-60 minutes later and 4-hourly to a max of 20mg per 24 hours *(Using the max dose of 4 x 5mg ODTs per day for 3 days = 12 x 5 mg ODT):* **R106.96** (100% SEP) and **R64.18** (60% of SEP)

**NB:** It is concerning to note that haloperidol injection had only been added to the NICE guidelines in 2019, as haloperidol was registered with the MHRA for delirium. Global vs local availability of medicines warrants investigation.

**Other resources:** n/a

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **VALUES, PREFERENCES, ACCEPTABILITY** | **Is there important uncertainty or variability about how much people value the options?**<br>Minor [ ] Major [ ] Uncertain [X]<br>**Is the option acceptable to key stakeholders?**<br>Yes [ ] No [ ] Uncertain [X] | There is no information available about the acceptability of olanzapine to stakeholders. However, given the absence of other options in the management of delirium, it could be a viable and acceptable alternative. |
| **EQUITY** | **Would there be an impact on health inequity?**<br>Yes [ ] No [X] Uncertain [X] | There is no available local survey data – based on expert opinion. |

| Version | Date | Reviewer(s) | Recommendation and Rationale |
|---|---|---|---|
| Initial | 18 August 2022 | LR, SM, TK, NG, MM, TL | Olanzapine (all formulations) suggested as an option to haloperidol to manage delirium where non-pharmacological management is not sufficient (conditional recommendation, low to very low certainty evidence). |
| V1.0 | 28 Mar 2024 | LR | Updated to reflect erratic supplies of haloperidol IM |

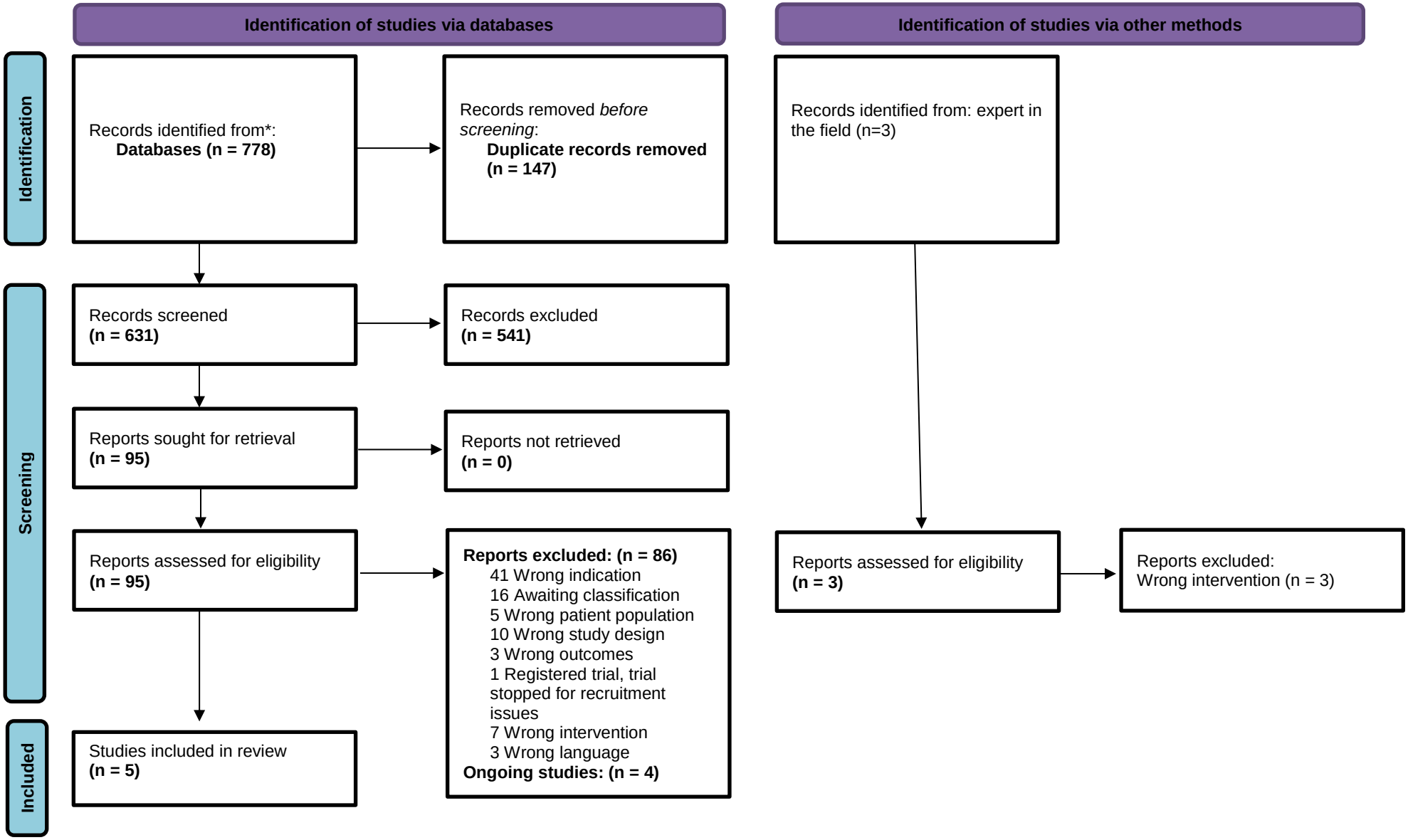
## References


1. Du Plooy N, Day C, Manning K, Abdullah F, James K, Grace L, et al. Prevalence and outcome of delirium among acute general medical inpatients in Cape Town, South Africa. S Afr Med J. 2020;110(6):519-24.10.7196/SAMJ.2020.v110i6.14363
2. Day C, Manning K, Abdullah F, James K, Grace L, April C, et al. Delirium in HIV-infected patients admitted to acute medical wards post universal access to antiretrovirals in South Africa. S Afr Med J. 2021;111(10):974-80.10.7196/SAMJ.2021.v111i10.15628
3. Nikooie R, Neufeld KJ, Oh ES, Wilson LM, Zhang A, Robinson KA, et al. Antipsychotics for Treating Delirium in Hospitalized Adults: A Systematic Review. Ann Intern Med. 2019;10.7326/M19-1860.10.7326/M19-1860
4. American Psychiatric Association DSM-5 Task Force. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders: DSM-5. 5th ed. Washington, D.C.: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.
6. National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). Delirium: diagnosis, prevention and management [Internet]. [London]: NICE; 2010 [updated July 2020; cited Feb 2022]. (Clinical guideline 103 [CG103]). Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/Guidance/CG103
7. Scottish Intercollegiate Guidelines Network (SIGN). Risk reduction and management of delirium [Internet]. [Edinburgh]: SIGN; 2019. (SIGN publication no. 157) [updated March 2019; cited Feb 2022]. Available from: https://www.sign.ac.uk/our-guidelines/risk-reduction-and-management-of-delirium/
8. Victorian Government Department of Human Services. Clinical practice guidelines for the management of delirium in older people [Internet]. [Melbourne]: HCOASC; 2006 [cited Feb 2022]. Available from: https://www.delirium.health.qut.edu.au/__data/assets/pdf_file/0006/858372/delirium-cpg.pdf
9. Finucane AM, Jones L, Leurent B, Sampson EL, Stone P, Tookman A, et al. Drug therapy for delirium in terminally ill adults. Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews, 2020, Issue 1. Art. No.: CD004770. DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004770.pub3.
10. Skrobik YK, Bergeron N, Humont N, Gottfried SB. Olanzapine vs haloperidol: treating delirium in a critical care setting. Intensive Care Med. 2004 (3):444-9. DOI: 10.1007/s00134-003-2117-0
11. Jain R, Arun P, Sidana A, Sachdev A. Comparison of efficacy of haloperidol and olanzapine in the treatment of delirium. Indian J Psychiatry. 2017(59):451-6. DOI: 10.4103/psychiatry.IndianJPsychiatry_59_17
12. Van der Vorst MJDL, Neefjes ECW, Boddaert MSA, Verdegaal BATT, Beeker A, Teunissen SCC, et al. Olanzapine versus haloperidol for treatment of delirium in patients with advanced cancer: a phase III randomized clinical trial. Oncologist; 2020(25):e570-7. DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2019-047

## Appendix 1: Search Strategy

| | |
|---|---|
| #9 | #1 AND #2 AND #8 |
| #8 | #3 OR #4 OR #5 OR #6 OR #7 |
| #7 | schizophrenia[mh] OR schizophreni*[tiab] |
| #6 | dementia[mh] OR dementia*[tiab] |
| #5 | confusion[mh] OR confus*[tiab] OR disorientat*[tiab] OR bewilderment[tiab] OR delirium*[tiab] |
| #4 | paranoid disorders[mh] OR paranoi*[tiab] |
| #3 | psychotic disorders[mh] OR psychosis[tiab] OR psychotic[tiab] OR psychoses[tiab] OR psychiatric disorder*[tiab] OR mental disorders[mh] OR mental illness*[tiab] OR mental disorder*[tiab] OR mood disorders [mh ] OR mood disorder*[tiab] OR affective disorder*[tiab] OR bipolar disorder[mh] OR bipolar[tiab] OR mania*[tiab] OR manic[tiab] |
| #2 | Search: aggression[mh] OR aggress*[tiab] OR disruptive behavior*[tiab] OR disruptive behaviour*[tiab] OR agitat*[tiab] OR violent behavior*[tiab] OR violent behaviour*[tiab] |
| #1 | Search: olanzapine[mh] OR olanzapine*[tiab] OR zyprexa*[tiab] OR zolafren*[tiab] OR LY 170053[tiab] OR LY170053[tiab] OR LY 170052[tiab] |

## Appendix 2: PRISMA Flow Chart




*Modified From:* Page MJ, McKenzie JE, Bossuyt PM, Boutron I, Hoffmann TC, Mulrow CD, et al. The PRISMA 2020 statement: an updated guideline for reporting systematic reviews. BMJ 2021;372:n71. doi: 10.1136/bmj.n71. For more information, visit: http://www.prisma-statement.org/

## Appendix 3: AGREE II Appraisal Summary

| Guideline | Domain 1 | Domain 2 | Domain 3 | Domain 4 | Domain 5 | Domain 6 | OA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **NICE:** DELIRIUM: diagnosis, prevention and management | 94% | 81% | 88% | 100% | 67% | 63% | 83% |
| **SIGN 157:** Risk reduction and management of delirium | 94% | 97% | 65% | 81% | 73% | 58% | 67% |
| Management of delirium in older people | 100% | 89% | 72% | 89% | 50% | 79% | 83% |

Domain 1: Scope and purpose
Domain 2: Stakeholder involvement
Domain 3: Rigour of development
Domain 4: Clarity of presentation
Domain 5: Applicability
Domain 6: Editorial independence
OA: overall assessment

## Appendix 4: Table of excluded studies, with reasons

| Author, date | Type of study | Reason for exclusion |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Bak, 2019 | SR* | Wrong indication |
| 2. Belgamwar, 2005 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 3. Burry, 2018 | SR | Wrong intervention |
| 4. Burry, 2019 | SR | Wrong intervention |
| 5. Dundar, 2016 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 6. Fernández Sánchez, 2009 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 7. Huf, 2009 | SR | Wrong language |
| 8. Huf, 2016 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 9. Lacasse, 2016 | SR | Wrong intervention |
| 10. Maglione, 2011 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 11. Mühlbauer, 2021 | SR | Wrong patient population |
| 12. Nikooie, 2019 | SR | Wrong intervention |
| 13. Paris, 2021 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 14. Pelland, 2009 | SR | Wrong language |
| 15. Seida, 2012 | SR | Wrong patient population |
| 16. Shoptaw, 2009 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 17. Tulloch, 2004 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 18. Williamson, 2019 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 19. Yildiz, 2003 | SR | Wrong language |
| 20. Yildiz, Sachs 2003 | SR | Wrong study design |
| 21. Yunusa, 2019 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 22. Zaman, 2017 | SR | Wrong indication |
| 23. Baldaçara, 2011 | RCT# | Wrong indication |
| 24. Battaglia, 2003 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 25. Battaglia, 2005 | RCT | Wrong outcomes |
| 26. Beasley, 1996 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 27. Belgamwar, 2005 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 28. Bozzatello, 2017 | RCT | Wrong patient population |
| 29. Breier, 2000 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 30. Breier, 2001 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 31. Breier, 2002 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 32. Chan, 2014 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 33. Clark, 2001 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 34. David, 2001 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 35. Eli, 2005 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 36. Faay, 2020 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 37. Fontaine, 2003 | RCT | Wrong patient population |
| 38. Gareri, 2004 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 39. Hsu, 2010 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 40. Huf, 2009 | RCT | Wrong intervention |
| 41. Huang, 2015 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 42. Hwang, 2012 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 43. Jin, 2009 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 44. Katagiri, 2013 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 45. Kinon, 2000 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 46. Kinon, 2001 | RCT | Wrong outcomes |
| 47. Kinon, 2004 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 48. Kittipeerachon, 2016 | RCT | Wrong intervention |
| 49. Kong, 2009 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 50. Krakowski, 2014 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 51. Lindbord, 2003 | RCT | Wrong outcomes |
| 52. Meehan, 2001 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 53. Meehan, 2001 (1) | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 54. Meehan, 2001 (2) | RCT | Awaiting classification |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 55. Meehan, 2001 (3) | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 56. Meehan, 2002 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 57. Mintzer, 2002 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 58. Ono, 2008 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 59. Raveendran, 2007 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 60. Schneider, 2006 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 61. Smith, 2003 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 62. Street, 2000 | RCT | Wrong patient population |
| 63. Svestka, 2002 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 64. Verhey, 2006 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 65. Villari, 2009 | RCT | Wrong intervention |
| 66. Wright, 2001 | RCT | Awaiting classification |
| 67. Wright, 2003 | RCT | Wrong indication |
| 68. Hirsch, 2019 | Narrative review | Wrong study design |
| 69. Houston, 2019 | Narrative review | Wrong study design |
| 70. Wagstaff, 2005 | Narrative review | Wrong study design |
| 71. Pascual, 2007 | Observational study | Wrong study design |
| 72. Walther, 2014 | Observational study | Wrong study design |
| 73. ACTRN12610000033044 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 74. NCT00316238 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 75. NCT00485810 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 76. NCT00485901 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 77. NCT011234082 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 78. NCT00649510 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 79. NCT00797277 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 80. NCT00833300, 2009 | Registered trial | Registered trial, trial stopped for recruitment issues |
| 81. NCT00970281 | Ongoing trial | Wrong indication |
| 82. Elsayem, 2010 | Pilot study | Wrong study design |
| 83. Citrome, 2007 | Quantitative review | Wrong study design |
| 84. Srivastava, 2010 | Summary of review | Wrong study design |
| 85. deAlmeida, 2017 | Review of reviews | Wrong study design |
| 86. Jones, 2001 | Summary of RCTs | Wrong study design |

*SR = systematic review, #RCT = randomized controlled trial

## Appendix 5: Table of Ongoing Trials

| Citation | Study Design | Population (n) | Treatment |
|---|---|---|---|
| Arak University of Medical Sciences. IRCT20141209020258N114, first registered 3 July 2019, recruiting. | RCT with parallel assignment | 50 | Patients randomised to haloperidol 2.5mg (max 40mg) intramuscular injection (IMI) every 6 hours or olanzapine 2.5 to 10mg (max 20mg) orally |
| Arak University of Medical Sciences. IRCT20200927048852N1, first registered 13 October, recruiting. | Phase III RCT with parallel assignment | 90 | Patients randomised to haloperidol 2.5mg per day for up to 10 days or olanzapine 2.5mg to 10mg per day for up to 10 days or quetiapine 12.5 to 75mg per day |
| HCA Hospice Care. NCT04750395, first registered 11 February 2021, ongoing | RCT with parallel assignment | 80 | Patients randomised to transmucosal haloperidol, two doses of 2.5mg every 24 hours with up to two breakthrough doses or transmucosal olanzapine, two doses of 5mg with up to two breakthrough doses |
| Tan Tock Seng Hospital. NCT04833023, first registered 6 April 2021. | RCT with parallel assignment | 72 | Patients randomised to haloperidol oral solution 1mg (max 6mg in 24 hours), 2 hourly until max reached with midazolam 2mg as rescue dose (2mg q2h prn) or olanzapine orodispersible tablet 2.5mg (max 15mg in 24 hours), 2 hourly until max reached with midazolam 2mg as rescue dose (2mg q2h prn) |

# South African National Essential Medicine List
# Adult Hospital Level and PHC Medication Review Process
# Component: Emergencies and injuries

## MEDICINE REVIEW

### Executive Summary

**Date:** May 2022
**Medicine (INN):** Morphine
**Medicine (ATC):** N02AA01
**Indication (ICD10 code):** J81 (The relief of moderate to severe pain in patients with acute pulmonary oedema).
**Patient population:** Adult patients with acute pulmonary oedema with distress, anxiety, or restlessness
**Prevalence of condition:** According to the Global Health Data Exchange (GHDx) registry, a search with the keyword "heart failure", the current worldwide prevalence of HF is 64.34 million cases (8.52 per 1,000 inhabitants), or 0.8%. The overall prevalence of clinically identified heart failure is estimated to be 3–20 cases/1000 population, but rises to > 100 cases/1000 population in those aged ⩾65 years. The PICO population ONLY includes those patients with distress, anxiety or restlessness - there is limited prevalence data for this cohort but it is estimated as a small proportion of the total APE cohort.[28]
The average incidence of hospitalized ADHF was 11.6 per 1,000 persons, aged ≥55 years, per year.[29,30,31] Considering only the population with anxiety, restlessness and distress, no prevalence of these symptoms cold be found in literature. As approximately 15% of patients with acute decompensated heart failure has morphine prescribed - one can assume that anxiety could be present in around 15% of acute decompensated heart failure. So, 15% of 0.8% is approximately 0.12%.
**Level of Care:** PHC, Adult Hospital Level
**Prescriber Level:** Clinician (Doctor)
**Current standard of Care:** SL or IV Nitrates; IV or PO Furosemide, IV Morphine
**Efficacy estimates: (preferably NNT):** 67 NNH (mortality)
**Motivator/reviewer name(s):** Michael McCaul, Clint Hendrikse, Gustav Thom, Idriss Kallon, Veranyuy Ngah, Rephaim Mpofu Trudy Leong.
**PTC affiliation:** Gustav Thom – KZN PTC

### Key findings

- We conducted a rapid review of clinical evidence on whether intravenous/intra-osseus morphine should be used in the treatment of acute pulmonary distress
- We identified four systematic reviews of observational studies. The two most relevant, up-to-date, and highest quality reviews were used to inform recommendations for critical outcomes.
- Morphine may increase in-hospital and all-cause mortality (OR 1.78; 95% CI 1.01 to 3.13; 15 more per 1000, from 0 fewer to 40 more; n=151 735 participants) and may result in a large increase in need for invasive mechanical ventilation (OR 2.72; 95% CI 1.09 to 6.80; 45 more per 1000, from 2 more to 136 more; n=167 847 participants) compared to not using morphine.
- No available data could be sourced on whether morphine increases non-fatal adverse events, ICU or hospital length of stay.

**PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITEE RECOMMENDATION:**

| Type of recommendation | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **x** | | | |

**Recommendation:** The PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee suggests not to use morphine for the treatment of acute pulmonary distress.
*Rationale:* Available evidence shows that morphine may increase in-hospital and all-cause mortality and may result in a large increase in invasive mechanical ventilation compared to not using morphine. No available data could be found on whether morphine increases non-fatal adverse events, ICU or hospital length of stay.
**Level of Evidence:** Low certainty of evidence
**Review indicator:** New high-quality evidence of a clinically relevant benefit

**NEMLC RECCOMENDATION – 23 JUNE 2022:**

**NEMLC MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022:**

NEMLC accepted the proposal to amend the remove morphine the treatment of acute pulmonary distress. However, recommended that a caution be included in the STG, accordingly:

**CAUTION**

Do not use morphine for pulmonary oedema, as there is observational data providing a signal of harm.

Furthermore, once the respetive chapter is finalised, it was recommended that a circular be drafted and disseminated regarding the harms associated with use of morphine for distress in pulmonary oedema.

**Monitoring and evaluation considerations**

**Research priorities**

**Authors:** Idriss Kallon[1], Veranyuy Ngah[1], Clint Hendrikse[2, 5], Gustav Thom[3, 5], Michael McCaul[1,4, 5], Rephaim Mpofu[5,6], Trudy Leong [7,8]

[1]Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Department of Global Health, Stellenbosch University
[2]Division of Emergency Medicine, University of Cape Town
[3]KwaZulu-Natal Department of Health
[4]SA GRADE Network
[5] PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee (2019-2023)
[6] Department of Medicine, Division of Clinical Pharmacology, Groote Schuur Hospital, University of Cape Town
[7]Essential Drugs Programme, National Department of Health
[8] Secretariat to the PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee (2019-2023); Secretariat to the National Essential Medicines List Committee (2021- )

**Declarations of interest:** IK, VN, GT, MM and TL have no interests pertaining to morphine.

**Acknowledgments:** Rephaim Mpofu (affiliated to University of Cape Town, Groote Schuur Hospital, Adult Hospital Level Committee, National Department of Health, South Africa and PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee, 2019-2023) assisted with the costing analysis.

## Background

Morphine has been prescribed for patients with acute decompensated heart failure, but there is little evidence for safety and efficacy when used for this indication. The suggested mechanism is that morphine may assist with anxiolysis and reduce preload (Ellingsrun, 2016). However, a mortality benefit has not been demonstrated, and recent evidence suggests increase in adverse events and 30-day mortality. Morphine is included in both the Adult and PHC EML/STG for the management of pulmonary oedema/acute decompensated heart failure, specifically for patients who are experiencing anxiety. In the Adult Hospital EML/STG it is recommended under Acute Pulmonary Oedema "if distressed. Consider adding Morphine". In the PHC EML/STG, it is recommended "if patient is very anxious or restless". The evidence to support this is unclear/lacking (expert opinion) and recent evidence of harm has emerged (Gao *et al*, 2021 and Lin *et al*, 2021).

## Research Question

Should intravenous morphine be used in the treatment of acute pulmonary distress?

## Methods

We conducted a rapid review of evidence for the use of intravenous morphine in patients with acute pulmonary oedema. We systematically searched Ovid MEDLINE, Embase and the Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews on February 12, 2022 for Randomised Controlled Trials (RCTs) and Systematic Reviews (SRs) of RCtTs or observational studies. Additionally, we searched the Pan African Clinical Trial registry for any ongoing studies from 2021. The search strategy can be seen in Appendix 1. Screening of title and abstracts and full text screening, selection of studies and data extraction was conducted

independently and in duplicate by two reviewers (IK and VN). Title and abstract, including full text screening was done using the Covidence systematic review software. AMSTAR II was used to appraise all the systematic reviews included in the study by a single reviewer (VN), checked by a second reviewer (IK). GRADE was applied to determine the certainty of evidence and the GRADEPro software was used to generate evidence profiles. Relevant study data were extracted into a narrative table of results. MM, IK, VN and CH reviewed the overall report. Where multiple eligible SRs were included, we reported evidence from the most relevant, recent and high-quality review or reviews in order to provide evidence across all *a priori* outcomes.

## Eligibility criteria for review

| | |
|---|---|
| **Population:** | Adult 18 years and older patients with acute pulmonary oedema with distress, anxiety, or restlessness in-hospital or prehospital.<br>**Exclusion**: post-op complications, non-cardiogenic, congested cardiac failure* |
| **Intervention:** | Standard of care without Morphine: Standard of care includes IV and Sublingual nitrates and IV and PO Furosemide) |
| **Comparator:** | Standard of care with intravenous/intra-osseus Morphine: Standard of care includes IV and Sublingual nitrates and IV and PO Furosemide |
| **Outcomes:** | Mortality, AEs, SAEs, ICU length of stay, Hospital length of stay |
| **Studies:** | RCTs and SRs |

**This question is restricted to acute pulmonary oedema*

## Results

The search produced 709 records where 683 reports were irrelevant. We included 25 reports for full text review, excluded 21, and included four systematic review reports for data extraction and synthesis. See the PRISMA (Appendix 2) for further details, which include reasons for exclusions. Also, refer to table of excluded studies with reasons (Table 2). Gao *et al*., (2021) and Zhang *et al* (2021) were assessed to be of moderate quality (according to AGREE II) of the four included systematic reviews and were considered most relevant and up-to-date. AMSTAR II assessment results in Appendix 4. Relevant pooled outcomes from Gao and Zhang were re-GRADED (see Appendix 5)

### Description of included studies

We found no RCTs addressing this question. The four included studies were systematic reviews of observational studies, with three using meta-analyses to aggregate results. The effect estimates in the meta-analysis were adjusted. Standard of care was not stated in the reviews.

Gao *et al* (2021) investigated the risk of mortality associated with opioid use in acute heart failure. They included 6 observational retrospective studies, with 15 1735 participants in total. Treatment given to the control groups was not described. The authors report extracting adjusted measures of effect from primary studies for meta-analysis where reported, however do not report on which factors were adjusted for. Gil *et al* (2019) assessed morphine use in the treatment of acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. They included seven studies (one randomized controlled trial, one non-randomized control trial and five observational studies), and 150639 participants. Lin *et al* (2021) studied intravenous morphine in heart failure and Zhang *et al* (2021) investigated the safety of morphine in patients with acute heart failure. Lin *et al* (2021) included five studies (three propensity-matched cohorts and two retrospective analysis (one unpublished) with 14 9967 participants. Zhang *et al* (2021) included seven retrospective case-control studies and 172 226 participants, including adjusted measures of effect similar to Gao (2011). The treatment given to control groups in included studies was not stated.

See Table 1 for detailed information on included studies.

## Internal validity of the systematic reviews, GRADE and absolute effects

AMSTAR II was used to determine the internal validity of included SRs (Appendix 5). In an effort to reduce duplication of effort in synthesis, we used the most relevant (to the PICO), up-to-date and highest quality SRs, among those, we prioritized reviews using GRADE. If a selected review did not report on all relevant outcomes, the next best review with relevant outcomes reported was used. Where needed outcomes were re-GRADED accounting for differencing in contextual/clinical interpretation such as indirectness and imprecision. Gao et al., (2021) included one secondary analysis of a previously conducted RCT which was excluded from our list of included studies to avoid double counting.

Gao and Zang had the highest AMSTAR II scores overall (moderate quality review), however Goa was considered overall to be the most relevant, up-to-date and internally valid as they also used GRADE. Gao did not report their reasons for the selection of type of studies included in the review neither did they report on the funding sources of each study included in the review hence scored as moderate quality. The Lin and Gil reviews were of critically low quality.

Absolute effects were calculated from pooled effect data where possible. In the absence of baseline event data (control event rates for pooled effects), absolute effects were calculated using reported baseline events either (where available) from pooled baseline event data from included reviews across the same outcome or large risk observational studies for that outcome to determine baseline prevalence. This was done for mortality and SAEs.

## Effect of interventions

**Mortality** (in-hospital mortality and 30-day mortality)

Morphine may increase in-hospital mortality (OR 1.78; 95% CI 1.01 to 3.13, low certainty of evidence, six observational studies, n=151 735 participants) resulting in 15 more per 1000, from 0 fewer to 40 more in hospital deaths (Evidence Profile in Appendix 5 and Figure 1). (Gao, 2021) Gao *et al* (2021) did not report any baseline event rates for standard of care or for the intervention arms, thus to calculate absolute effects we assumed a baseline control event rate of 2% for overall mortality based on Lin (2019).

Zhang *et al* (2021) found no association between morphine and in-hospital mortality (OR: 1.94; 95% CI 0.93 to 4.03; p = 0.08, Figure 2) however the direction of effect is still in line with Gao *et al* (2021).

**Figure 1**: Forest plot of the pooled analysis evaluating in-hospital and 30-day mortality according to opioid use. IV, inverse variance (Gao, 2021)

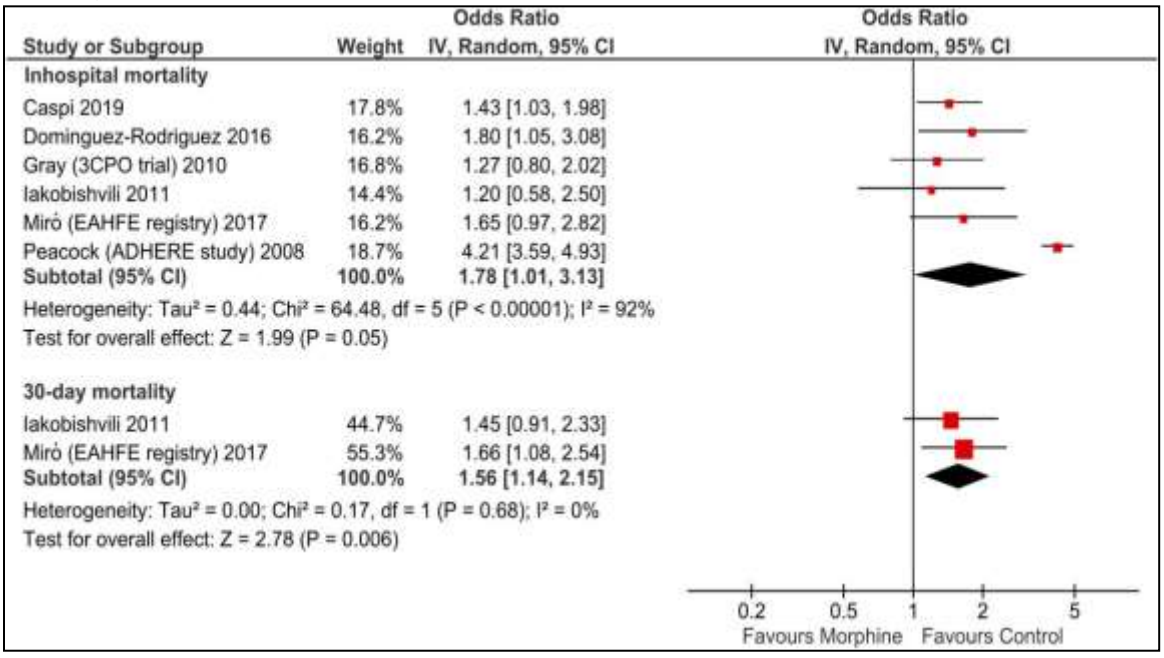


**Figure 2**: Forest plot of in-hospital mortality (Gao, 2021)

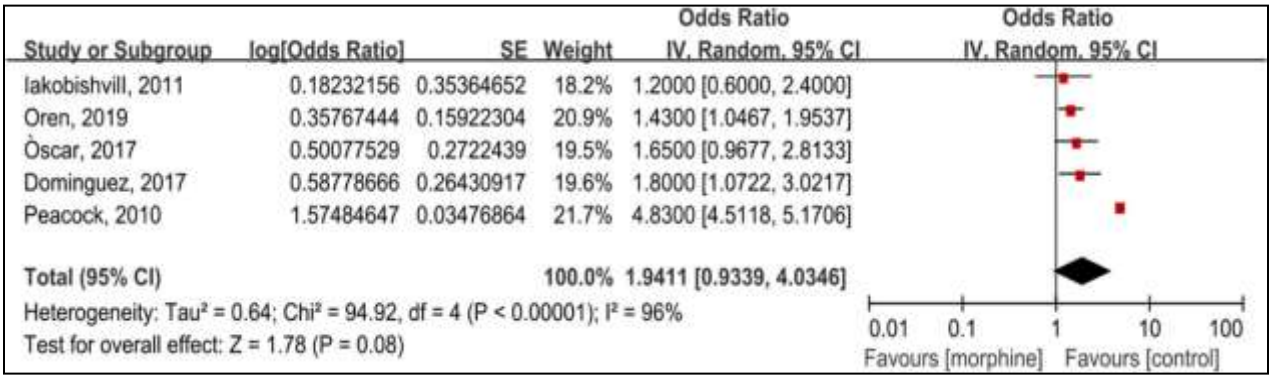
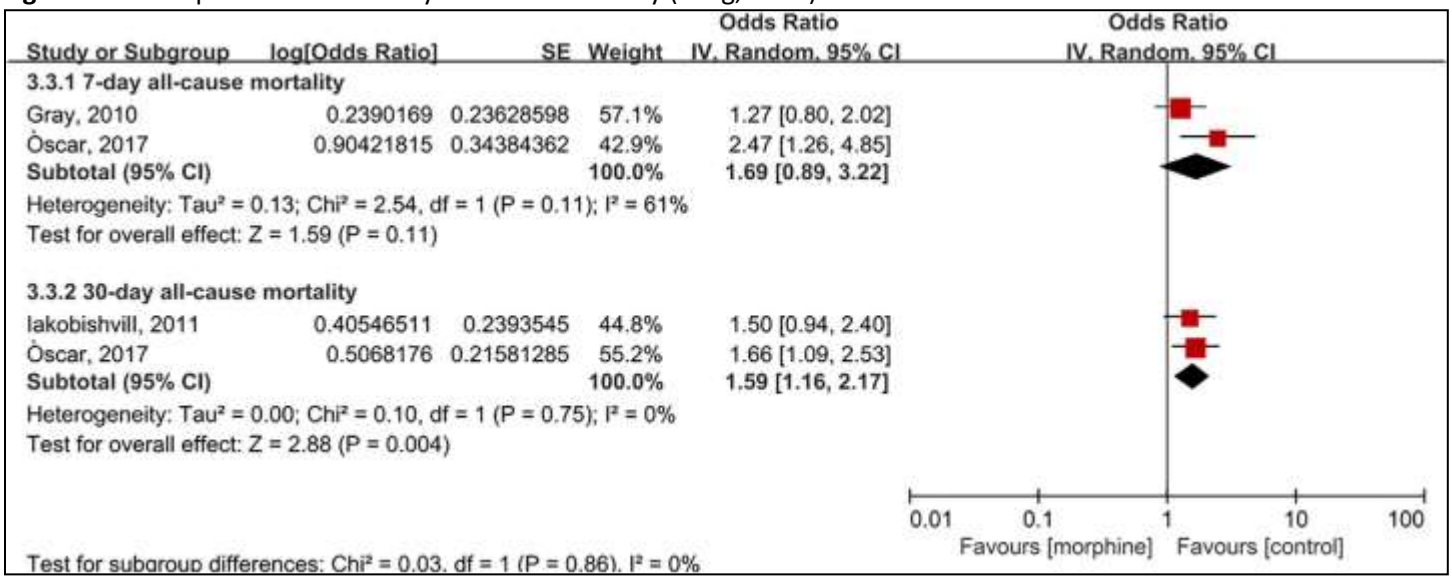



**Figure 3**: Forest plot of 7 and 30-day all-cause mortality (Zang, 2021)

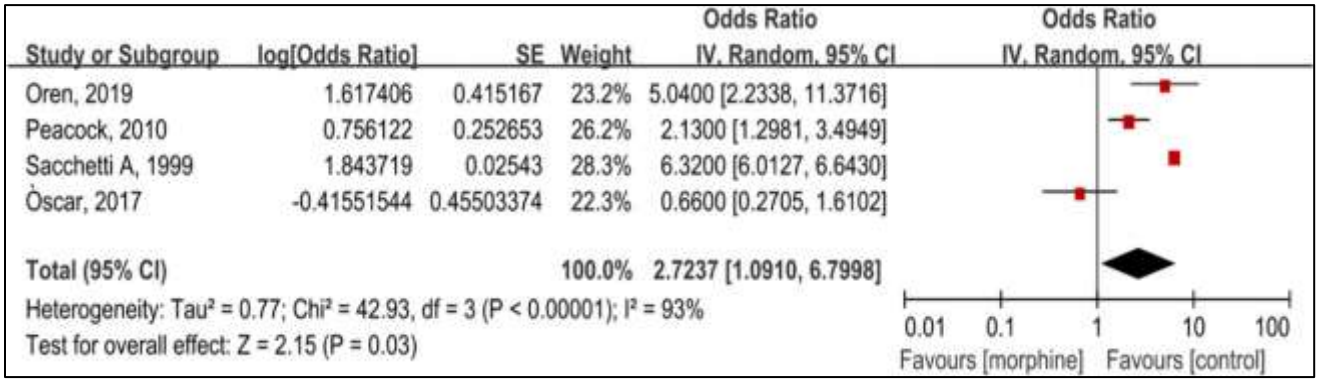



Zhang et al (2021) found that morphine treatment was associated with an increased significant 30-day all-cause mortality (OR 1.59; 95% CI 1.16 - 2.17) from three studies (n=9 904). Gao et al (2021) reported a similar association between morphine use and 30-day mortality (OR 1.56; CI 1.14 -2.15) from two studies (n=986) (Figure 3).

**SAE (need for invasive mechanical ventilation)**

Morphine may result in a large increase in invasive mechanical ventilation (OR 2.72; 95% CI 1.09-6.80, low certainty of evidence, four observational studies, n=167 847 participants) (Figure 4) (Zang, 2021). Baseline event rate not reported in review thus calculated from estimates of mechanical ventilation baseline event rate based on Gray (2008, NEJM).[27]

**Figure 4**: Forest plot of invasive mechanical ventilation



**Adverse events**
Not measured.

**ICU or hospital length of stay**
Not measured.

## Conclusion

This evidence review of use of intravenous morphine in the treatment of acute pulmonary distress included four systematic reviews of observational studies. This review focuses on adjusted pooled evidence from two high-quality, relevant and up-to-date reviews pooling more than 150 000 participants, with direction and magnitude of effects consistent across other included systematic reviews. Based on the most recent, relevant, and highest quality reviews, morphine may increase in-hospital and all-cause mortality and may result in a large increase in invasive mechanical ventilation compared to not using morphine. We have no data on whether morphine increases non-fatal adverse events, ICU or hospital length of stay.

## Evidence to Decision Framework

| | JUDGEMENT | EVIDENCE & ADDITIONAL CONSIDERATIONS |
|---|---|---|
| QUALITY OF EVIDENCE OF BENEFIT | **What is the certainty of evidence?**<br>High [ ] Moderate [ ] Low [X] Very low [ ]<br>*High quality:* confident in the evidence<br>*Moderate quality:* mostly confident, but further research may change the effect<br>*Low quality:* some confidence, further research likely to change the effect<br>*Very low quality:* findings indicate uncertain effect | Observational evidence (using ROBINS-1) downgraded by one level for risk of bias and by one level for inconsistency.<br><br>Goa (2021) judged indirectness as serious (for unclear reasons), thus scoring very low certainty. The committee did not consider this evidence as indirect as evidence has clear alignment to PICO and is across various settings, including HIC and LIMCs. |
| EVIDENCE OF BENEFIT | **What is the size of the effect for beneficial outcomes?**<br>Large [ ] Moderate [ ] Small [ ] None [x] | The review identified no beneficial anticipated effects. |
| EVIDENCE OF HARMS | **What is the size of the effect for harmful outcomes?**<br>Large [ ] Moderate [x] Small [ ] None [ ] | • Morphine may increase in-hospital mortality (OR 1.78; 95% CI 1.01 to 3.13, low certainty of evidence, six observational studies, n=151 735 participants) resulting in 15 more per 1000, from 0 fewer to 40 more in hospital deaths (NNH 67)<br>• Morphine may result in a large increase in invasive mechanical ventilation (OR 2.72; 95% CI 1.09-6.80, low certainty of evidence, four observational studies, n=167 847 participants) 45 more per 1,000 (from 2 more to 136 more) baseline event rate based on Gray (2008, NEJM)[27]<br>• Absolute effects for mortality based on baseline event rates provided by Lin (assuming 2% mortality rate) |
| BENEFITS & HARMS | **Do the desirable effects outweigh the undesirable harms?**<br>Favours intervention (No Morphine) [x] Favours control (Morphine) [ ] Intervention = Control *or* Uncertain [ ] | **Desirable effects** (of morphine): None<br><br>**Undesirable effects** (of morphine): moderate |
| THERAPEUTIC INTERCHANGE | Therapeutic alternatives available: n/a<br>Yes [ ] No [ ] | n/a |
| FEASABILITY | **Is implementation of this recommendation feasible?**<br>Yes [x] No [ ] Uncertain [ ] | No evidence of feasibility was reviewed/sought.<br><br>The Committee was of the opinion that not giving morphine is standard practice in most settings and clinicians would accept such a recommendation. |

**RESOURCE USE**

**How large are the resource requirements?**

| More intensive | Less intensive | Uncertain |
|---|---|---|
| | x | |

The Committee was of the opinion that removing a medicine would result in cost savings, with less mechanical ventilation.

**Price/treatment course of morphine, IV per patient** *(direct medicine prices only)*

| Medicine | Tender price (ZAR)* |
|---|---|
| Morphine 10mg/mL ampoule | 4.03** |
| Sodium chloride 0.9% 10 ml | 1.56** |
| **Total** | **5.59** |

**Weighted average tender prices*

*** Contract circular HP06-2021SVP, June 2022*

**Prevalence assumptions:**

- According to the Global Health Data Exchange (GHDx) registry, the current worldwide prevalence of HF is approximately 0.8%.
- Meta-analysis by Platz et al (2015) showed that the prevalence of pulmonary oedema in heart failure and reduced ejection fraction (HF-REF) trials ranged from 75% to 83% (though the criteria defining HF varied across trials).
- Experts suggest that approximately 15% of HF-REF patients are administered morphine (as per the 2019 Adult Hospital and 2020 PHC STGs and EML recommendations).

**Other assumptions**:

- Adult population estimated to be >19 years of age (38189762); based on StatsSA mid-year population estimates of 2021.
- 85.04% of the population is uninsured (>19 years = 32476574)
- Most patients would use a maximum dose of morphine, IV (10 mg).
- Patients would only have one episode per year.

Estimated annual budget impact (medicine costs only):

1: Lower prevalence of HF-REF 75%:
*Administered morphine*: 0.09 % of 32 476 574 = 28 449
*Estimated medicine cost per annum:* R159 033

2. Upper prevalence of HF-REF of 83%:
*Administered morphine:* 0.1 % of 32 476 574 = 32 347
*Estimated medicine cost per annum:* R180 818

Therefore, disinvesting morphine IV for the treatment of anxiety in adult patients with pulmonary oedema would result in a saving of R159 000 to R180 000 per year.

References:


- Council for Medical Schemes Annual report, 2018/9. Available at: https://www.medicalschemes.com/files/Annual%20Reports/CMSAR2018_19.pdf
- StatsSA mid-year population estimates of 2021.
- Platz E, et al. Assessment and prevalence of pulmonary oedema in contemporary acute heart failure trials: a systematic review. Eur J Heart Fail. 2015 Sep;17(9):906-16.
- Contract circular HP06-2021SVP, June 2022

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **VALUES, PREFERENCES, ACCEPTABILITY** | **Is there important uncertainty or variability about how much people value the options?**<br>Minor [x] Major [ ] Uncertain [ ]<br>**Is the option acceptable to key stakeholders?**<br>Yes [ ] No [ ] Uncertain [x] | No evidence of values and acceptability was reviewed/sought.<br><br>The Committee expects minor variability in how patients value critical outcomes such as death and avoiding serious adverse events.<br><br>Acceptable to stakeholders in the hospital setting (district level). However, removing morphine from practice for pulmonary oedema may result in some resistance or lack of behavior change, especially in the prehospital setting. |
| **EQUITY** | **Would there be an impact on health inequity?**<br>Yes [ ] No [x] Uncertain [ ] | Removing morphine will likely result in increased equity across settings where morphine was not available or had unequal access. |

| Version | Date | Reviewer(s) | Recommendation and Rationale |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.0 | 13 April 2022 | ID, VN, CH, GT, MM, TL | |

## References:


1. Agewall S. *Morphine in acute heart failure.* J Thorac Dis 2017;9(7):1851-1854. Morphine in acute heart failure - PMC (nih.gov).
2. Berger PE, Archambault P, Poitras J. *ARE narcotics harmful in the treatment of acute pulmonary edema*? A critically appraised topic. Scientific Abstracts (163). CJEM.JCMU 2010;12(3): 277. https://regroup-production.s3.amazonaws.com/documents/ReviewReference/446507477/2010_caepacmu_scientific_abstracts_may_29jun_2_2010_montreal_que.pdf AWSAccessKeyId=AKIAJBZQODCMKJA4H7DA&Expires=1649927249&Signature=0VmxGwfBhnatQd4mhGTTFViP9Xw%3D.
3. Dominquez-Rodriquez A, Burillo-Putze G, Garcia-Saiz M, Aldea-Perona A, Harmand MG, Miro O, Abreu-Gonzalez P. *Study Design and Rationale of A "Multicenter, Open-labelled, Randomized Controlled Trial Comparing Midazolam Versus Morphine in Acute Pulmonary Edema"*: MIMO Trial. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther 2017; 31:209-213. https://regroup-production.s3.amazonaws.com/documents/ReviewReference/446507644/Dominguez-Rodriguez2017_Article_StudyDesignAndRationaleOfAMult.pdf?AWSAccessKeyId=AKIAJBZQODCMKJA4H7DA&Expires=1649927437&Signature=jmXwEE%2FEGNk86Oiz4uqzj9H519c%3D.
4. Dominquez-Rodriquez A, Avanzas P, Burillo-Putze G, Abreu-Gonzalez P. *Influence of morphine treatment on in-hospital mortality among patients with acute heart failure*. Med Intensiva 2017;41:382-384. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/27707523/.
5. Ellingsrud C, Agewall S. *Morphine in the treatment of acute pulmonary Edema.* Tidsskr Nor Legeforen 23-24, 2014; 134:2272-2275. DOI: 10.4045/tidsskr.14.0359. https://europepmc.org/article/med/25492336.
6. Gao D, David C, Rosa MM, Costa J, Pinto FJ, Caldeira D. *Risk of Mortality Associated with Opioid Use in Patients With Acute Heart Failure: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis*. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol 2021; 77: 123-129. https://journals.lww.com/cardiovascularpharm/Fulltext/2021/02000/The_Risk_of_Mortality_Associated_With_Opioid_Use.1.aspx?casa_token=3_w9ZgnmS7MAAAAA:h69WkGI2LE5IY2iQxuqjotG33DEXDJkIfKfyWkgsIStgzGrkstUST2pO7K-uugqUlDNJbAiyXZCipcT8G7LqAGQ.
7. Gil V, Domínguez-Rodríguez A, Masip J, Peacock WF, Miró, O. *Morphine Use in the Treatment of Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Edema and Its Effects on Patient Outcome: A Systematic Review*. Current Heart Failure Reports 2019; 16:81-88. https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s11897-019-00427-0.
8. Graham CA, Cattermole GN. *Morphine should be abandoned as a treatment for acute cardiogenic pulmonary oedema*. Emergency Medicine Australasia 2009;21:160. https://europepmc.org/article/med/19422415.
9. Hall M, Griffiths R, Appadu B. *Is Morphine indicated in acute pulmonary oedema*. Emerg Med J 2005; 22:391-392. https://emj.bmj.com/content/22/5/391.1.
10. Herlitz J, Bång A, Omerovic E, Wireklint-Sunström B. *Is pre-hospital treatment of chest pain optimal in acute coronary syndrome?* The relief of both pain and anxiety is needed. International Journal of Cardiology 2011;(149): 147–151. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ijcard.2010.10.012.
11. Holm M, Tomvall P, Henareh L, Jensen U, Golster N, AlstrÖm P, Santos-Pardo I, Fedchenko N, Venetsantos D, Beck O, Linden J. *The Movement Trial*. J Am Heart Assoc. 2019;8:1-11. https://regroup-production.s3.amazonaws.com/documents/ReviewReference/446507814/The%20movement%20trial.pdf?AWSAccessKeyId=AKIAJBZQODCMKJA4H7DA&Expires=1649927338&Signature=A%2B6hA7QBaWj45lkaiu22KIv9ZBg%3D.

12. Johnson MJ, McDonagh TA, Harkness A, McKay SE, Dargie HJ. *Morphine for the relief of breathlessness in patients with chronic heart failure – a pilot study*. The European Journal of Heart Failure 2002; (4):753–756. https://doi.org/10.1016/S1388-9842(02)00158-7.
13. Johnson MJ, Cockayne S, Currow, DC, Bell K, Hicks K, Fairhurst C, Gabe R, Togerson D, Jefferson L, Oxberry S, Ghosh J, Hogg, KJ, Murphy J, Allgar V, Cleland JGF, Clark AL. *Oral modified release morphine for breathlessness in chronic heart failure: a randomized placebo-controlled trial*. ESC Heart Failure 2019: 6:1149-1160. https://doi.org/10.1002/ehf2.12498.
14. Kubica J, Adamski P, Ostrowska M, Sikora J, Kubica JM, Sroka WD, Stankowska K, Buszko K, Navarese EP, Jilma B, Siller-Matula JM, Marszatt MP, Ros´c´D, Kozin´ski M. *Morphine delays and attenuates ticagrelor exposure and action in patients with myocardial infarction: the randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled IMPRESSION trial*. European Heart Journal 2016; 37:245–252. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurheartj/ehv547.
15. León-Delgado M, Rodríguez- Campos L, Bastidas-Goyes A, Herazo-Cubillos A, Martin-Arsanios D, Muñoz-Ortíz J, Cifuentes-Serrano A, García-Ávila P, Beltrán-Caro M. *Opioids for the management of dyspnea in patients with heart failure: a systematic review of the literature*. Colombian Journal of Anesthesiology 2019; 47(1): 49-56. http://www.scielo.org.co/scielo.php?script=sci_arttext&pid=S0120-33472019000100049.
16. Lin Y, Chen Y, Yuan J, Pang X, Liu H, Dong S, Chen Q. *Intravenous morphine use in acute heart failure increases adverse outcomes: a meta-analysis*. Rev. Cardiovasc. Med 2021; 22(3): 865-872. https://article.imrpress.com/journal/RCM/22/3/10.31083/j.rcm2203092/2153-8174-22-3-865.pdf.
17. Mattu A, Lawner B. *Prehospital Management of Congestive Heart Failure*. Heart Failure Clin 5 2009; 19–24. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.hfc.2008.08.004.
18. Orso D, Boaro G, Cassan E, Guglielmo N. *Is morphine safe in acute decompensated heart failure? A systematic review of the literature*. European Journal of Internal Medicine 2019; 69:e8–e10. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ejim.2019.08.016.
19. Oxberry SG, Togerson DJ, Bland MJ, Clark AL, Cleland JGF, Johnson MJ. *Short-term opioids for breathlessness in stable chronic heart failure: a randomized controlled trial*. European Journal of Heart Failure 2011;13:1006–1012. https://doi.org/10.1093/eurjhf/hfr068.
20. Oxberry SG, Bland MJ, Clark AL, Cleland JGF, Johnson M. *Minimally clinically important difference in chronic breathlessness: Every little helps*. American Heart Journal 2012; 164(2):229-235. https://doi.org/10.1016/j.ahj.2012.05.003.
21. Oxberry SG, Bland M, Clark AL, Cleland JG, Johnson MJ. *Repeat Dose Opioids May Be Effective for Breathlessness in Chronic Heart Failure if Given for Long Enough*. Journal of Palliative Medicine 2013; 16(3): 250-255. https://doi.org/10.1089/jpm.2012.0270.
22. Poole-Wilson PA. *Treatment of Acute Heart Failure. Out with the Old, in With the New*. JAMA 2002; 287(12):1578-1580. https://jamanetwork.com/journals/jama/article-abstract/194759?casa_token=BCNCbvwpL5YAAAAA:1qrmmoDv0V4K_l6VN03nl3XwTWuowC7ASSJpVBMkuAlT6n4GKv6cKcbkVH2hpYQH11U-qdDRFw.
23. Triposkiadis F, Parissis JT, Starling RC, Skoularigis J, Louridas G. *Current drugs and medical treatment algorithms in the management of acute decompensated heart failure*. Expert Opin Investig Drugs 2009; 18(6):695-707. https://doi.org/10.1517/13543780902922660.
24. Vicicevic Z. *Is it necessary to use Morphine in acute pulmonary edema*? Lijec Vjesn 2003; 125(47):1-2. https://pubmed.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/12812030/.
25. Zhang D, Lai W, Lui X, Shen Y, Hong K. *The safety of morphine in patients with acute heart failure: A systematic review and meta-analysis*. Clin Cardiol 2021; 44:1216–1224. https://doi.org/10.1002/clc.23691.
26. Dominguez-Rodriguez A, Burillo-Putze G, Garcia-Saiz MDM, Aldea-Perona A, Harmand MG, Mirò O, Abreu-Gonzalez P; MIMO investigators. Study Design and Rationale of "A Multicenter, Open-Labeled, Randomized Controlled Trial Comparing MIdazolam Versus MOrphine in Acute Pulmonary Edema": MIMO Trial. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther. 2017 Apr;31(2):209-213. doi: 10.1007/s10557-017-6722-5
27. Gray A, Goodacre S, Newby DE, Masson M, Sampson F, Nicholl J; 3CPO Trialists. Noninvasive ventilation in acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema. N Engl J Med. 2008 Jul 10;359(2):142-51. doi: 10.1056/NEJMoa0707992.
28. McMurray JJ, Stewart SE. pidemiology, aetiology, and prognosis of heart failure. Heart 2000;83:596-602.
29. Chang PP, et al. Incidence and survival of hospitalized acute decompensated heart failure in four US communities . Am J Cardiol. 2014 Feb 1;113(3):504-10. doi: 10.1016/j.amjcard.2013.10.032.
30. Lippi G, Sanchis-Gomar F. Global epidemiology and future trends of heart failure. AME Med J 2020;5:15.
31. Ntusi NB, Mayosi BM. Epidemiology of heart failure in sub-Saharan Africa. Expert Rev Cardiovasc Ther. 2009 Feb;7(2):169-80. doi: 10.1586/14779072.7.2.169.

## Appendix 1: Search Strategy

**Ovid MEDLINE**

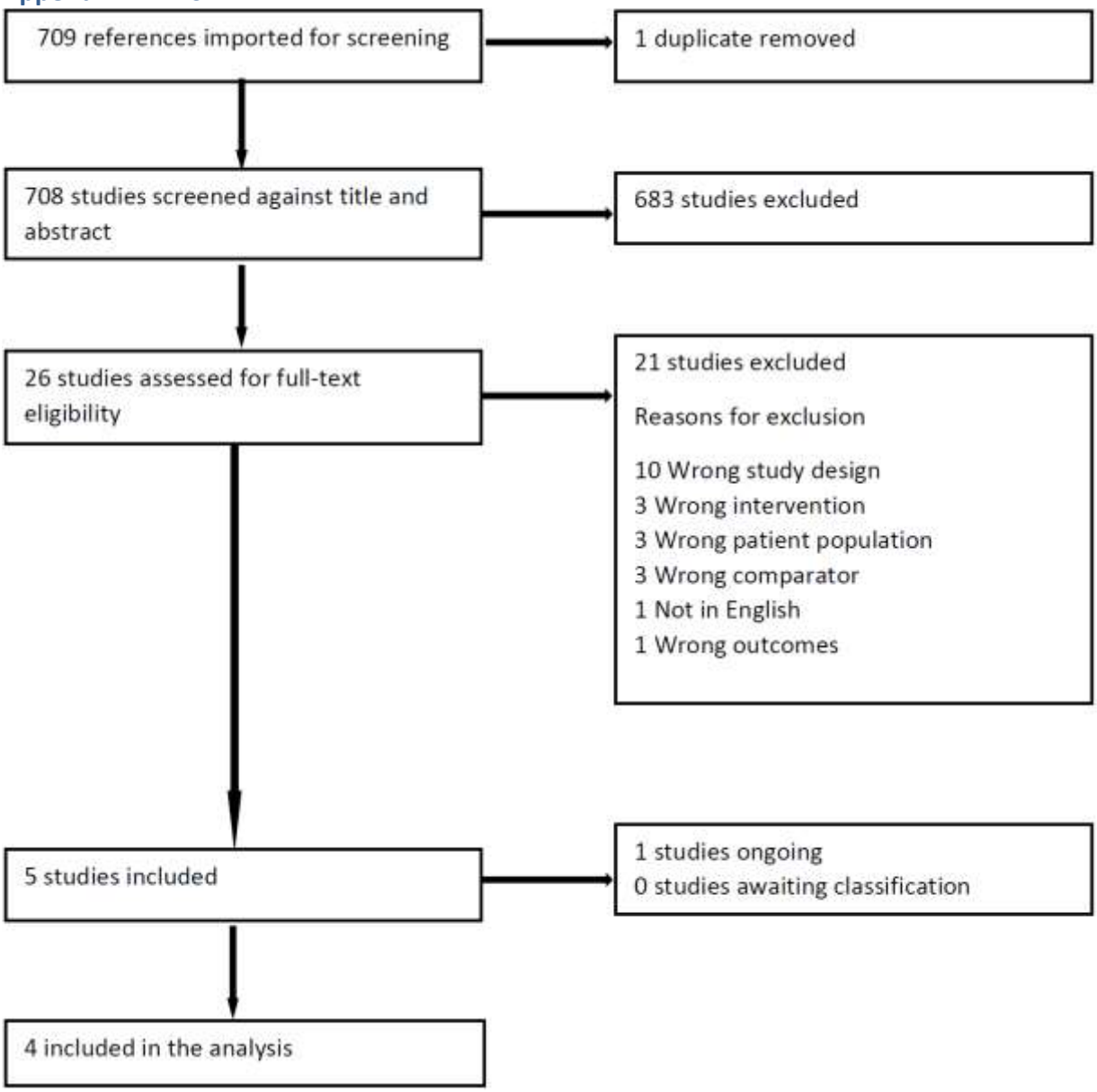
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Pulmonary Edema/ | 17628 |
| 2 | (pulmonary adj2 (edema or oedema)).tw. | 19427 |
| 3 | decompensated heart failure.mp. | 3870 |
| 4 | decompensated cardiac failure.mp. | 37 |
| 5 | exp Heart Failure/ | 135224 |
| 6 | 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 | 161564 |
| 7 | Morphine/ | 39357 |
| 8 | morphin*.tw. | 55512 |
| 9 | 7 or 8 | 62460 |
| 10 | 6 and 9 | 332 |
| 11 | randomized controlled trial.pt. | 558117 |
| 12 | controlled clinical trial.pt. | 94685 |
| 13 | (randomized or placebo or randomly or trial or groups).ab. | 3175308 |
| 14 | drug therapy.fs. | 2440064 |
| 15 | 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 | 5255383 |
| 16 | exp animals/ not humans.sh. | 4955382 |
| 17 | 15 not 16 | 4572999 |
| 18 | 10 and 17 | 152 |
| 19 | Meta-Analysis as Topic/ | 20787 |
| 20 | meta-analysis/ or "systematic review"/ | 257861 |
| 21 | meta analy*.tw. | 223648 |
| 22 | metaanaly*.tw. | 2381 |
| 23 | (systematic adj (review* or overview*)).tw. | 232823 |
| 24 | 19 or 20 or 21 or 22 or 23 | 389013 |
| 25 | 10 and 24 | 7 |
| 26 | 18 or 25 | 152 |

**Embase**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | lung edema/ | 51465 |
| 2 | (pulmonary adj2 (edema or oedema)).tw. | 31414 |
| 3 | decompensated heart failure.mp. | 8216 |
| 4 | decompensated cardiac failure.mp. | 73 |
| 5 | exp Heart Failure/ | 597104 |
| 6 | 1 or 2 or 3 or 4 or 5 | 641888 |
| 7 | Morphine/ | 116360 |
| 8 | morphin*.tw. | 78128 |
| 9 | 7 or 8 | 130930 |
| 10 | 6 and 9 | 3362 |
| 11 | (random* or factorial* or placebo* or assign* or allocat* or crossover*).tw. | 2281083 |
| 12 | ((blind* or mask*) and (single or double or triple or treble)).tw. | 301379 |
| 13 | crossover procedure/ | 69726 |
| 14 | double blind procedure/ or single blind procedure/ | 237518 |
| 15 | randomization/ or placebo/ | 471387 |
| 16 | parallel design/ or Latin square design/ | 15682 |
| 17 | randomized controlled trial/ | 697078 |
| 18 | exp ANIMAL/ or exp NONHUMAN/ or exp ANIMAL EXPERIMENT/ or exp ANIMAL MODEL/ | 32230501 |
| 19 | exp human/ | 24589730 |
| 20 | 18 not 19 | 7640771 |
| 21 | 11 or 12 or 13 or 14 or 15 or 16 or 17 | 2588211 |
| 22 | 21 not 20 | 2254143 |
| 23 | 10 and 22 | 360 |
| 24 | exp Meta Analysis/ | 237876 |
| 25 | ((meta adj analy*) or metaanalys*).tw. | 289477 |
| 26 | (systematic adj (review* or overview*)).tw. | 283463 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 27 | "systematic review"/ | 331371 |
| 28 | 24 or 25 or 26 or 27 | 559508 |
| 29 | 10 and 28 | 106 |
| 30 | 23 or 29 | 417 |
| **Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews** | | |
| #231 | MeSH descriptor: [Pulmonary Edema] explode all trees | 273 |
| #232 | (pulmonary edema):ti,ab,kw | 1925 |
| #233 | ("pulmonary œdema"):ti,ab,kw | 262 |
| #234 | MeSH descriptor: [Heart Failure] explode all trees | 10224 |
| #235 | (decompensated heart failure):ti,ab,kw | 1337 |
| #236 | (decompensated cardiac failure):ti,ab,kw | 407 |
| #237 | #231 or #232 or 233 or #234 or #235 or #236 | 25707 |
| #238 | MeSH descriptor: [Morphine Derivatives] explode all trees | 7372 |
| #239 | (morphin*):ti,ab,kw | 15665 |
| #240 | #238 or #239 | 17651 |
| #241 | #240 and #237 | 208 |

## Appendix 2: PRISMA



## Appendix 3

**Table 1: Characteristics of included studies**

| Citation | Study design | Population | Treatment | Main Findings | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Lin Y, Chen Y, Yuan J, Pang X, Liu H, Dong S, Chen Q. Intravenous morphine use in acute heart failure increases adverse outcomes: a meta-analysis. Rev. Cardiovasc. Med. 2021 Sep 24;22(3):865-72. | Systematic review and Meta-analysis | 5 studies (3 propensity-matched cohorts, 2 retrospective analysis (1 unpublished)).<br><br>Total n=149,967 (intravenous morphine group, n=22,072; no-morphine group, n=127,895)<br><br>All studies provided the primary clinical endpoints, 4 studies provided secondary endpoints; 3 studies had follow-up durations from 30 days to 12 months<br><br>Patients with AHF | Intravenous morphine used in treatment group (dosage≥0.5 mg/kg) vs no morphine used in the control group. | **In-hospital mortality**<br>OR = 2.14, 95% CI: 0.88–5.23, $p$ = 0.095, $I^2$ = 97.1 %;<br>Very low certainty of evidence<br><u>Total group:</u><br>2899/22072 in intervention group<br>3180/127895 in control group.<br><br><u>Sub group analysis in score matching studies</u>:<br>178/1165 in intervention group<br>132/1165 in control group<br>(OR=1.41, 95% CI: 1.11–1.80, p =0.005, $I^2$ = 0%)<br><br>**ICU Length of stay**<br>Not reported<br><br>**Hospital Length of stay**<br>Not reported | All included studies represented a low risk of bias in selective outcome reporting and outcome assessment. The scores of NOS for study quality assessment of included studies ranged from 7 to 9. However, the funnel plot asymmetry for in-hospital mortality and invasive mechanical ventilation indicated publication bias. Between-study heterogeneity in in-hospital mortality was $I2$ = 97.1%. Accordingly, subgroup analyses including score-matching studies only were conducted, for which in-hospital mortality was $I2$ = 0%, suggesting low heterogeneity. |
| Gao D, David C, Rosa MM, Costa J, Pinto F, Caldeira D. The Risk of Mortality Associated With Opioid With Acute Heart Failure: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis. J Cardiovasc Pharmacol Volume 77, Number 2, February 2021 | Systematic Review and Meta-analysis | 6 studies (observational retrospective studies)<br><br>Total n=151735<br><br>Patients with AHF defined as acute signs/or symptoms of low cardiac output and/or congestion, either de novo or as a heart failure exacerbation, or as reported by investigators irrespective of the details reported. | Treatment: IV morphine<br><br>Control: Standard of care was not stated. | **In-hospital mortality**<br>OR 1.78; 95% CI 1.01–3.13. very low certainty of Evidence, 151 735 participants, 6 studies<br>Sensitivity analysis (OR 1.46; 95% CI 1.19–1.79; $I^2$= 0%.<br>Total n=151735<br>Intervention n=22649<br>Control n=129086<br>**30-day mortality**<br>OR 1.56; 95% CI 1.14–2.15<br>Very low certainty of evidence, 986 participants, 6 studies<br>Total n=986<br>Intervention n=493<br>Control n=493<br>**ICU length of stay**<br>No reported<br>**Hospital length of stay**<br>Not reported | Opioids seem to be associated with a higher risk of in-hospital mortality; however, the true effect may be substantially different from the estimated effect.<br>Opioids seem to be associated with a higher risk of 30-d mortality, however the true effect may be substantially different from the estimated effect. |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Gil V, Domínguez—Rodríguez A, Masip J, Peacock WF, Miró O. Morphine Use in the Treatment of Acute Cardiogenic Pulmonary Edema and its Effects on Patient Outcome: A Systematic Review. Current Heart Failure Reports (2019) 16:81–88 https://doi.org/10.1007/s11897-019-00427-0 | Systematic Review (7 studies) | 1 randomized controlled trial<br>1 non-randomized controlled trial<br>5 observational studies<br><br>Total n=150639<br>Intervention n=22080<br>Control n=128559<br><br>Unable to determine total number of males and females as not all studies provide this information | Treatment:<br>Morphine with or without other drugs<br><br>Control:<br>Other drugs without morphine, but the drugs were not stated. | All studies with the exception of Sachetti et al. evaluated mortality in the patients.<br>The conclusion from the review was that administration of morphine to patients with acute pulmonary oedema could lead to worse outcomes in the patients ranging from increased length of hospital stay to death | A meta-analysis not performed but a narrative review of each study was done |
| Zhang D, Lai W, Liu X, Shen Y, Hong K. The safety of morphine in patients with acute heart failure: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Clin Cardiol. 2021;44(9):1216-1224. https://doi.org/10.1002/clc.23691 | Systematic review and meta-analysis | Seven studies (all retrospective case-control studies)<br><br>Total n=172226<br>Morphine group n=22967<br>Control group n=149259<br><br>Mean age range from 73 to 81 years<br><br>Sample size range from 181 to 147 362. | Treatment<br>Morphine and intravenous morphine.<br>Dosage not stated<br><br>Control treatment was not stated. | **In-hospital mortality**<br>Five studies<br>Total n=170993<br>Morphine n=22338<br>Control n= 148655<br>(OR: 1.94; 95% CI 0.93 to 4.03; p = 0.08, $I^2$ = 96%)<br>**7-day and 30-day all-cause mortality**<br>Three studies included<br>Total n= 9904<br>Morphine n= 1175<br>Control n=8729<br>**For 7 day all-cause mortality**<br>(OR: 1.69; 95% CI 0.89 to 3.22; p = 0.11, $I^2$ = 61%)<br>**For 30-day all-cause mortality**<br>OR: 1.59; 95% CI 1.16 to 2.17; p = 0.004, $I^2$ = 0%<br>**SAE**<br>Risk of invasive mechanical ventilation<br>4 studies<br>Total n=167847<br>Morphine n=22047<br>Control n= 145800<br>OR 2.72; 95% CI 1.09 to 6.80; p = 0.03, $I^2$ = 93%<br>**ICU length of stay**<br>Not reported<br>**Hospital length of stay**<br>Not reported | Publication bias could not be ascertained as the number of included studies was less than 10<br><br>The Newcastle-Ottawa Scale (NOS) for observational studies was used to assess the quality of the studies based on selection of the population, the comparability of the study, and the assessment of the outcome.<br>The study scored an average of 6.43<br><br>For the in-hospital mortality, risk of invasive mechanism and 7-day all-cause mortality outcomes the results showed significant heterogeneity<br>There was no heterogeneity for the 30-day all-cause mortality outcome |

## Appendix 4

### Table 2: Characteristics of excluded studies

| Citation | Type or record | Reason for exclusion |
|---|---|---|
| Agewall S. *Morphine in acute heart failure*. J Thorac Dis 2017;9(7):1851-1854. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Berger PE, et al.. *ARE narcotics harmful in the treatment of acute pulmonary edema? A critically appraised topic*. Scientific Abstracts (163). CJEM.JCMU 2010;12(3): 277. | Conference abstract | Wrong study design |
| Dominquez-Rodriquez A, , et al. Study Design and Rationale of *A"Multicenter, Open-labelled, Randomized Controlled Trial Comparing Midazolam Versus Morphine in Acute Pulmonary Edema":* MIMO Trial. Cardiovasc Drugs Ther 2017; 31:209-213 | Protocol | Wrong comparator |
| Dominquez-Rodriquez A, et al. *Influence of morphine treatment on in-hospital mortality among patients with acute heart failure*. Med Intensiva 2017;41:382-384. | Letter | Wrong comparator |
| Ellingsrud C, et al *Morphine in the treatment of acute pulmonary edema*. Tidsskr Nor Legeforen 23-24, 2014; 134:2272-2275. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Graham CA, et al. *Morphine should be abandoned as a treatment for acute cardiogenic pulmonary oedema*. Emergency Medicine Australasia 2009;21:160. | Letter | Wrong study design |
| Hall M, et al. *Is Morphine indicated in acute pulmonary oedema*. Emerg Med J 2005; 22:391-392. | Letter | Wrong study design |
| Herlitz J, et al. *Is pre-hospital treatment of chest pain optimal in acute coronary syndrome? The relief of both pain and anxiety is needed*. International Journal of Cardiology 2011;(149): 147–151. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Holm M, et al.. *The Movement Trial*. J Am Heart Assoc. 2019;8:1-11. | Journal article | Wrong intervention |
| Johnson MJ, et al.. *Morphine for the relief of breathlessness in patients with chronic heart failure – a pilot study*. The European Journal of Heart Failure 2002; (4):753–756. | Journal article | Wrong patient population |
| Johnson MJ, et al. *Oral modified release morphine for breathlessness in chronic heart failure: a randomized placebo-controlled trial*. ESC Heart Failure 2019: 6:1149-1160. | Journal article | Wrong intervention |
| Kubica J, et al.. *Morphine delays and attenuates ticagrelor exposure and action in patients with myocardial infarction: the randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled IMPRESSION trial*. European Heart Journal 2016; 37:245–252. | Journal article | Wrong patient population |
| León-Delgado M, et al.. *Opioids for the management of dyspnea in patients with heart failure: a systematic review of the literature*. Colombian Journal of Anesthesiology 2019; 47(1): 49-56 | Journal article | Wrong comparator |
| Mattu A, et al. *Prehospital Management of Congestive Heart Failure*. Heart Failure Clin 5 2009; 19–24. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Orso D, et al. *Is morphine safe in acute decompensated heart failure? A systematic review of the literature*. European Journal of Internal Medicine 2019; 69:e8–e10. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Oxberry SG, et al.. *Short-term opioids for breathlessness in stable chronic heart failure: a randomized controlled trial*. European Journal of Heart Failure 2011;13:1006–1012. | Journal article | Wrong patient population |
| Oxberry SG, et al.. *Minimally clinically important difference in chronic breathlessness: Every little helps*. American Heart Journal 2012; 164(2):229-235. | Journal article | Wrong outcomes |
| Oxberry SG, et al. *Repeat Dose Opioids May Be Effective for Breathlessness in Chronic Heart Failure if Given for Long Enough*. Journal of Palliative Medicine 2013; 16(3): 250-255. | Journal article | Wrong intervention |
| Poole-Wilson PA. *Treatment of Acute Heart Failure. Out with the Old, in With the New*. JAMA 2002; 287(12):1578-1580. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Triposkiadis F, et al.. *Current drugs and medical treatment algorithms in the management of acute decompensated heart failure.* Expert Opin Investig Drugs 2009; 18(6):695-707. | Journal article | Wrong study design |
| Vicicevic Z. Is it necessary to use Morphine in acute pulmonary edema? Lijec Vjesn 2003; 125(47):1-2. | Journal article | Not in English |

## Appendix 5: Certainty assessment

| Certainty assessment | | | | | | | № of patients | | Effect | | Certainty | Importance |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| № of studies | Study design | Risk of bias | Inconsist-ency | Indirectness | Imprecision | Other considerations | Morphine | SOC | Relative (95% CI) | Absolute (95% CI) | | |
| **In-hospital mortality** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | observational studies | serious[a] | serious[b] | not serious | not serious[c] | none | 794/22649 (3.5%) | 2582/129086[g] (2.0%) | **OR 1.78 (1.01 to 3.13)** | **15 more per 1,000 (from 0 fewer to 40 more)** | ⊕⊕◯◯ Low | CRITICAL |
| **SAE** | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | observational studies | not serious[d] | serious[e] | not serious | serious[f] | none | 1632/22047 (7,4%) | 4083/145800[g] (2,8%) | **OR 2.72 (1.09 to 6.80)** | **45 more per 1,000 (from 2 more to 136 more)** | ⊕⊕◯◯ Low | CRITICAL |

**CI:** confidence interval; **OR:** odds ratio; **SOC:** standard of care

***Explanations***

a. Serious risk of bias: At least one domain of bias in most studies was graded as serious according to ROBINS-I tool

b. With the exception of Peacock, confidence intervals show overlapping, point estimates have a some variation and there is a significant heterogeneity in the pooling. Peacock is a study that comprises a greater sample size (147k vs. 6k, the 2nd greatest) in comparison with the aforementioned studies, and is the only study conducted in a nation that does not abide by ESC guidelines. Inconsistency may be dampened with the exclusion of Peacock as observed following the jackknife sensitivity analysis, however as no concrete justification for the discrepancy was found

c. No imprecision: Not downgraded, very low baseline risk (rare events <2%), further changes in relative effects are unlikely to result in meaningful changes in absolute effects. Furthermore, not downgrading for imprecision as to not double downgrade/penalise for both inconsistency and imprecision.

d. No serious ROB: NCOS was used, low risk of bias for this outcome of included studies

e. Serious inconsistency: Significant heterogeneity across studies specifically Oscar (2017) and Sacchetti (1999)

f. Serious imprecision: Absolute effect does not cross the null threshold, potentially large relative effect (OR >2.5) with IOS met, however absolute effect ranges from trivial harms to possible large harms.

g. Baseline risk calculated from references 16 (for in-hospital mortality)and 27 (for SAE) as this data was not provided as generic inverse variance methods was used

## Appendix 6: Overall AMSTAR score for each of the included studies

| STUDY | AMSTAR RESULT |
|---|---|
| Lin Y, Chen Y, Yuan J, Pang X, Liu H, Dong S, Chen Q. Intravenous morphine use in acute heart failure increases adverse outcomes: a meta-analysis. Rev. Cardiovasc. Med. 2021 Sep 24;22(3):865-72. | Critically Low quality review |
| Gao D, David C, Rosa MM, Costa J, Pinto FJ, Caldeira D. The risk of mortality associated with opioid use in patients with acute heart failure: systematic review and meta-analysis. Journal of Cardiovascular Pharmacology. 2021 Feb 1;77(2):123-9. | Moderate quality review |
| Gil V, Domínguez-Rodríguez A, Masip J, Peacock WF, Miró Ò. Morphine use in the treatment of acute cardiogenic pulmonary edema and its effects on patient outcome: a systematic review. Current heart failure reports. 2019 Aug;16(4):81-8. | Critically Low quality review |
| Zhang D, Lai W, Liu X, Shen Y, Hong K. The safety of morphine in patients with acute heart failure: A systematic review and meta-analysis. Clinical cardiology. 2021 Sep;44(9):1216-24. | Moderate quality review |

## Appendix 7: Ongoing studies

### Ongoing studies

A Multicenter, Open-Labeled, Randomized Controlled Trial Comparing Midazolam Versus Morphine in Acute Pulmonary Edema": MIMO Trial(26)

*Brief Summary:* Acute pulmonary edema (APE) is a common condition in the emergency room, associated with considerable mortality. The use of intravenous morphine in the treatment of APE remains controversial and Benzodiazepines have been suggested as an alternative for morphine to relieving dyspnoea and anxiety in the patients with APE. The Midazolam versus Morphine in APE trial (MIMO) is a multicenter, prospective, open-label, randomized study designed to evaluate the efficacy and safety of morphine in patients with APE.
*Study type:* Interventional (Clinical Trial)
*Estimated enrollment:* 136 participants
*Allocation:* Randomized
*Intervention model:* Parallel assignment
*Masking:* None (Open Label)
*Primary purpose:* Treatment

**South African National Essential Medicine List**
**Primary Healthcare EML review process**
**Component: Emergencies & injuries**

## RAPID SCOPING REVIEW

**Date: 21 October 2021**

### Key findings

- The purpose of this rapid scoping review was to determine if there is any new evidence since the previous review of the evidence in 2018 for burn dressings and mupirocin to trigger a formal review.
- No additional RCTs or relevant evidence from SRs since 2018 of burns dressings was found.
- No evidence signal to indicate any change to original 2018 NEMLC recommendations for local wound care (Povidone iodine, silver sulfadiazine, mupirocin, nano-crystalline dressings, *melaleuca alternifolia*) in patients with burns.
- No evidence for the effectiveness mupirocin.
- 2018 and 2019 recommendations remain unchanged.

**PHC/ADULT HOSPITAL LEVEL EXPERT REVIEW COMMITEE RECOMMENDATION:**

| Type of recommendation | We recommend against the option and for the alternative **(strong)** | We suggest not to use the option **(conditional)** | We suggest using either the option or the alternative **(conditional)** | We suggest using the option **(conditional)** | We recommend the option **(strong)** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | X | | | |

**Recommendation:** Current standard of care in the STG to be retained – topical povidone iodine for infected burns.
*Rationale:* No new evidence could be identified for alternative treatment options for septic burns.
**Level of Evidence:** Low to very low certainty
**Review indicator:** New evidence sufficient to change the recommendation

**NEMLC RECOMMENDATION (MEETING OF 23 JUNE 2022):**
NEMLC accepted the review and proposed recommendation, but recommended that the PHC/Adult Hospital Level Committee consider reviewing other dressings for wounds, noting that this topic would be prioritised in the topic prioritisation project plan and may be reviewed in the next review cycle. Furthermore, it was noted that wound dressings are not funded from the Provincial Pharmaceutical budgets.

**Monitoring and evaluation considerations**

**Research priorities**

## 1. Executive Summary

**Date:** 21 October 2021
**Medicine (INN):** Dressings for burns (antibiotics and chemotherapeutics for dermatological use)
**Medicine (ATC):** D06
**Indication (ICD10 code):** Burns T30.0-3/T31.0-9 + (Y34.99)
**Patient population:** Adults and paediatrics
**Level of Care:** Primary Healthcare
**Prescriber Level:** Nurse prescriber
**Current standard of Care:** Povidone iodine 5% cream
**Efficacy estimates:** n/a
**Motivator/reviewer name(s):** Dr Michael McCaul, Dr Clint Hendricks, Dr Gustav Thom
**PTC affiliation:** GT – KZN PPTC

**2. Name of reviewer(s)** : Michael McCaul (1), Clint Hendricks (2), Gustav Thom (3)

1) Division of Epidemiology and Biostatistics, Department of Global Health, Stellenbosch University. SA GRADE Network
2) Division of Emergency Medicine, University of Cape Town. Emergency Physician, Cape Town
3) District Clinical Specialist Team, Amajuba District, KZN

MM, CH, GT have no interests pertaining to topical preparations for management of burns.

## 3. Introduction/ Background

A proposal was made to add topical mucopirocin to the Adult Hospital Level and PHC STG for the management of septic burns. As the issue of topical preparations had been investigated and not added during the 2017-19 NEMLC review cycle it was necessary to ascertain whether new evidence had emerged since that would necessitate a new review.

## 4. Purpose/Objective:

To determine if new evidence has emerged since the 2018 (PHC, 21.3.2) and 2019 (Adult, 20.15) EML for dressings for burn care, specifically:

- Povidone iodine
- Silver sulfadiazine
- Mupirocin
- Nano-crystalline dressings
- Melaleuca alternifolia

## 5. Methods:

We conducted a rapid scoping review of the literature to determine whether there is any new evidence to trigger a formal review of burn dressings for adult and PHC level.

a. **Data sources** : Searched https://www.epistemonikos.org/ for updated or new systematic review of effect on 13 October 2021. Search terms included all intervention terms (as above, including dressings) and terms linked to the population (i.e. burns).

b. **Search strategy :** Title and abstract, and full text screening was done individually by MM, with a 2nd reviewer checking excluded studies (GT). Search strategy in Appendix 1. We used the search filers for systematic reviews and then for trials. We only included evidence (systematic reviews or RCTs) from 2018 onwards and checked CENTRAL for updated systematic reviews that originally supported the 2018 and 2019 Adult and PHC reviews.

c. **Search Yield:** We screened 74 articles, of which 10 were included in full text screening. Seven SRs were included in the narrative summary.

**d. Excluded studies:**

| *Author, date* | Type of study | Reason for exclusion |
|---|---|---|
| ***Rahimi 2021*** | SR | Biosynthetic Dressings not relevant |
| ***Li, 2020*** | SR | Nano-silver dressing combined with recombinant human epidermal growth factor. Not relevant. |
| ***Harshman, 2019*** | SR | Acute Emergency care (pre-burn center) |
| ***Wormald, 2020*** | SR | Hydrosurgical debridement. Not relevant |

**e. Evidence synthesis**

***Description of included SRs***

We found 4 Cochrane Systematic Reviews and 3 non-Cochrane reviews. Three SRs were included (<2018) as they were part of the original evidence review in 2018/2019 (See Table 11: Characteristics of included reviews). Below we include original evidence from the 2018/2019 review, and additional evidence, with references.

***Results of Systematic Reviews***

We found no new RCTs addressing burn dressings. The 2013 Cochrane review informing the previous recommendations has not been updated. New SRs across topics provide no new evidence for povidone iodine, silver sulfadiazine, mupirocin, nano-crystalline dressings and melaleuca alternifolia.

***Silver Sulfadiazine***

Silver sulphadiazine was consistently associated with poorer healing outcomes than biosynthetic (skin substitute) dressings, silver-containing dressings and silicon-coated dressings. (Wasiak, 2013, Cochrane Review).

Silver sulfadiazine was associated with a statistically significant increase in burn wound infection vs. dressings/skin substitute (OR = 1.87; 95% CI: 1.09 to 3.19, I2 = 0%). Though, RCTs were at high, or unclear, risk of bias. Silver sulfadiazine was also associated with significantly longer length of hospital stay vs dressings/skin substitute (MD = 2.11 days; 95% CI: 1.93 to 2.28) (Barajas-Nava, 2013, Cochrane Review)

Similar results found in other SRs for SSD (Nimia, 2019 and Maciel, 2019). Moderate quality evidence indicates that there is no significant difference in wound healing between silver-containing foam dressing and SSD dressing (Chaganti, 2019).

***Povidone iodine:***

Cochrane review showed that there is probably no difference in infection rates between an iodine-based treatment vs moist exposed burn ointment (moderate certainty evidence) – Mean time to healing for wounds treated with povidone iodine vs chlorhexidine: MD - 2.21 days, 95% CI 0.34 to 4.08. (Norman, 2017, Cochrane Review)

***Melaleuca alternifolia:***

No available evidence could be sourced for cooling burns with Melaleuca alternifolia (tea tree oil) for the first 12 hours. There is also the associated risk of hypothermia for large burn wounds, if this is practiced

***Nano-crystalline dressings:***

Cochrane review showed that, "There is moderate certainty evidence that, on average, burns treated with nanocrystalline silver dressings probably have a slightly shorter mean time to healing than those treated with Vaseline gauze (difference in means -3.49 days, 95%CI -4.46 to -2.52; I2 = 0%; 2 studies, n=204), but low certainty evidence that there may be little or no difference in numbers of healing events at 14 days between burns treated with silver xenograft or paraffin gauze (RR 1.13, 95% CI 0.59 to 2.16 1 study; n=32) (Norman, 2017, Cochrane Review).

***Mupirocin:***

We found no RCTs or SRs of Mupirocin.

**Facial Burns**

***Topical antimicrobial agents versus topical non-antimicrobial agents*** *(Hoogewerf, 2020)*

There is moderate-certainty evidence that there is probably little or no difference between antimicrobial agents and non-antimicrobial agents (SSD and MEBO) in time to complete wound healing (hazard ratio (HR) 0.84 (95% confidence interval (CI) 0.78 to 1.85, 1 study, 39 participants).

***Topical antimicrobial agents versus other topical antimicrobial agent*** *(Hoogewerf, 2020)*

There is very low-certainty evidence regarding whether topical antimicrobial agents make a difference to wound infection (RR 0.73, 95% CI 0.46 to 1.17; 1 study, 15 participants).

**Skin substitutes versus topical antimicrobial agents** *(Hoogewerf, 2020)*

There is low-certainty evidence that a skin substitute may slightly reduce time to partial (i.e. greater than 90%) wound healing, compared with a non-specified antibacterial agent (MD –6.00 days, 95% CI –8.69 to –3.31; 1 study, 34 participants).

We are uncertain whether skin substitutes in general make any other difference in effects as the evidence is very low certainty. Outcomes included wound infection, pain, scar quality, adverse effects of treatment and length of hospital stay.

**Table of included studies**

| ***Author, date*** | ***Type of study*** | **n** | **Population** | **Comparators** | **Primary outcome** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Wasiak, 2013**[1]<br><br>(in original review) | Cochrane Systematic Review | 30 RCTs, poor quality | Any age with superficial or partial thickness burns | hydrocolloid dressings;<br>polyurethane film dressings;<br>hydrogel dressings;<br>silicon-coated nylon dressings;<br>biosynthetic skin substitute dressings;<br>antimicrobial (silver and iodine containing) dressings;<br>fibre dressings;<br>wound dressing pads | Time to healing<br>No of dressings<br>Pain<br>QOL<br>LOS<br>Infection<br>AE |
| Barajas-Navam 2013[2]<br><br>(in original review) | Cochrane Systematic Review | 36 RCTs (2117 participants) | People of any age or gender, with any type of burn injury | Systemic antibiotics given orally or parenterally<br>Selective intestinal decontamination with antibiotics<br>**Topical antibiotics, such as topical antimicrobial dressings or ointments**<br>Local airway prophylaxis, such as aerosolised antibiotics. | Burn wound infection<br>Invasive infection<br>Infection-related mortality<br>Adverse events<br>wound healing rate<br>Antibiotic resistance<br>All-cause mortality<br>LOS |
| Nimia, 2019[3] | Systematic Review | 24 RCTs<br><br>Low to unclear ROB | People with burns | SSD vs other dressings (with or without silver) | Infection control and wound healing |
| Marciel, 2019[4] | Systematic Review | 11 RCTS | Burn patients hospitalized in the burn ward | New treatments vs SSD | Complete healing |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Chaganti, 2019[5] | Systematic Review | 3 RCTS | Patients with partial thickness burns | foam dressing vs SSD and non-foam dressing | Wound healing |
| Norman, 2017[6]<br><br>(in original review) | Cochrane Systematic Review | 56 RCTs (5807 participants) | people with any burn wound | topical treatments with antiseptic properties. | time to complete wound healing<br>proportion of wounds completely healed during follow-up<br>AEs<br>QOL<br>Pain<br>Resource use |
| Hoogewerf, 2020[7] | Cochrane Systematic Review | 12 RCTs (507 participants) | People with facial burns of any depth | Topical antimicrobial agents<br>topical non-antimicrobial agents<br>Skin substitutes<br>Miscellaneous treatments | time to complete wound healing<br>proportion of wounds completely healed during follow-up<br>AEs<br>QOL<br>Pain<br>Resource use |

**f. Evidence quality:** Overall certainty of the evidence in the included SRs were low.

## Appendix 1 – Search strategy

(title:(burn OR burns) OR abstract:(burn OR burns)) AND (title:(dressings OR dresssing OR "povione iodine" OR "silver sulfadiazine" OR mupirocin OR "nano-crystalline" OR "melaleuca alternifolia") OR abstract:(dressings OR dressing OR "povione iodine" OR "silver sulfadiazine" OR mupirocin OR "nano-crystalline" OR "melaleuca alternifolia"))

| Version | Date | Reviewer(s) | Recommendation and Rationale |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 21 October 2021 | MM, CH, GT | Povidone iodine, topical retained for management of septic burns, as no new evidence could be identified for alternative treatment options for septic burns. |

**References:**


*Included studies*

1. Wasiak J, Cleland H, Campbell F, Spinks A. Dressings for superficial and partial thickness burns. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;2013(3). doi:10.1002/14651858.CD002106.pub4
2. Barajas-Nava LA, López-Alcalde J, Roqué i Figuls M, Solà I, Bonfill Cosp X. Antibiotic prophylaxis for preventing burn wound infection. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2013;2013(6). doi:10.1002/14651858.CD008738.pub2
3. Nímia HH, Carvalho VF, Isaac C, Souza FÁ, Gemperli R, Paggiaro AO. Comparative study of Silver Sulfadiazine with other materials for healing and infection prevention in burns: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *Burns*. 2019;45(2):282-292. doi:10.1016/j.burns.2018.05.014
4. Siqueira BS, Zanette GF. Versus Other Treatments : a Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis of. *An Bras Dermatol*. 2019;94(2):204-210.
5. Chaganti P, Gordon I, Chao JH, Zehtabchi S. A systematic review of foam dressings for partial thickness burns. *Am J Emerg Med*. 2019;37(6):1184-1190. doi:10.1016/j.ajem.2019.04.014
6. Norman G, Christie J, Liu Z, et al. Antiseptics for burns. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2017;2017(7). doi:10.1002/14651858.CD011821.pub2
7. Hoogewerf CJ, Hop MJ, Nieuwenhuis MK, Oen IMMH, Middelkoop E, Van Baar ME. Topical treatment for facial burns. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev*. 2020;2020(7). doi:10.1002/14651858.CD008058.pub3